

OFFICIAL NOTICE OF SALE AND BIDDING INSTRUCTIONS
BID FORM
AND
PRELIMINARY OFFICIAL STATEMENT

\$6,475,000*

CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS
(A political subdivision of the State of Texas located in Guadalupe County)
COMBINATION TAX AND LIMITED PLEDGE REVENUE
CERTIFICATES OF OBLIGATION, SERIES 2018

Bids Due
Tuesday, March 20, 2018
at 10:00 A.M., Central Time

* Preliminary, subject to change. See "THE CERTIFICATES - ADJUSTMENT OF PRINCIPAL AMOUNT AND MATURITY SCHEDULE FOR THE CERTIFICATES" herein.

This Official Notice of Sale does not alone constitute an invitation for bids but is merely notice of sale of the Certificates described herein. The invitation for bids on such Certificates is being made by means of this Official Notice of Sale, the Official Bid Form and the Preliminary Official Statement.

**OFFICIAL NOTICE OF SALE
AND
BIDDING INSTRUCTIONS**

\$6,475,000*

**CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS
(A political subdivision of the State of Texas located in Guadalupe County)
COMBINATION TAX AND LIMITED PLEDGE REVENUE
CERTIFICATES OF OBLIGATION, SERIES 2018**

Sealed Bids Due on Tuesday, March 20, 2018 at 10:00 A.M. Central Time

THE SALE

CERTIFICATES OFFERED FOR SALE AT COMPETITIVE BIDDING. The City of Seguin, Texas (the "City") is offering for sale at competitive bid its \$6,475,000* Combination Tax and Limited Pledge Revenue Certificates of Obligation, Series 2018 (the "Certificates").

PLACE AND TIME OF SALE. Bids for the purchase of the Certificates will be received until 10:00 A.M., Central Time, on Tuesday, March 20, 2018 at the City Hall, 210 East Gonzales, Seguin, Texas 78155. All bids received will be publicly opened and read at such time and place, and the results will be reported to the City Council of the City (the "City Council") at a regular meeting on the same day scheduled to convene at 5:30 P.M., and during such meeting the City Council will make an award of the Certificates or take such other action as may be deemed appropriate.

BIDDING PROCEDURES. No later than 10:00 A.M., Central Time, on Tuesday, March 20, 2018, bidders who wish to submit their bids electronically or by facsimile must provide two signed copies of the "Official Bid Form," and two signed copies of the "Issue Price Certificate," together with an envelope addressed to Mayor, City of Seguin, 210 East Gonzales, Seguin, Texas 78155, and plainly marked "Bid for Certificates," to Duane Westerman, SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc., 1020 N.E. Loop 410, Suite 640, San Antonio, Texas 78209.

Bidders must submit bids for the Certificates by one of the following methods:

- (1) Deliver bids directly to the City as described below in "Bids Delivered Directly to the City,"
- (2) Submit bids electronically as described below in "Electronic Bidding Procedure," or
- (3) Submit bids by facsimile as described below in "Facsimile Bidding Procedure."

Bids Delivered Directly to the City . . . Bids delivered directly to the City, which must be submitted in duplicate on the Official Bid Form and plainly marked "Bid for Certificates," are to be addressed to Mayor, City of Seguin, 210 East Gonzales, Seguin, Texas 78155. All such bids must be delivered at the above address no later than 10:00 A.M., Central Time, on Tuesday, March 20, 2018.

Electronic Bidding Procedure . . . Interested bidders may, at their option, submit their bid by electronic media, as described below, by 10:00 A.M., Central Time, on Tuesday, March 20, 2018.

Any prospective bidder that intends to submit an electronic bid must submit its electronic bid through the facilities of the Bidcomp/PARITY System ("PARITY"). Subscription to the Ipreo's BIDCOMP Competitive Bidding System is required in order to submit an electronic bid. The City will neither confirm any subscription nor be responsible for the failure of any prospective bidder to subscribe. An electronic bid made through the facilities of PARITY shall be deemed an irrevocable offer to purchase the Certificates on the terms provided in the Official Notice of Sale, and shall be binding upon the bidder as if made by a signed, sealed bid delivered to the City. The City shall not be responsible for any malfunction or mistake made by, or as a result of the use of the facilities of, PARITY, the use of such facilities being the sole risk of the prospective bidder. In the event of a malfunction in the electronic bidding process, bidders may submit their bids by facsimile as described below. Any bid received after the scheduled time for their receipt will not be accepted. If any provisions of the Official Notice of Sale shall conflict with information provided by PARITY as the approved provider of electronic bidding services, this Official Notice of Sale shall control. Further information about PARITY, including any fee charged, may be obtained from Donald Kursar, 1359 Broadway, New York, New York 10018, (212) 849-5021.

* Preliminary, subject to change (see "THE CERTIFICATES - Adjustment of Principal Amount and Maturity Schedule for the Certificates" and "CONDITIONS OF THE SALE - Basis of Award").

For purposes of both the written sealed bid process and the electronic bidding process, the time as maintained by PARITY shall constitute the official time for the receipt of bids. For information purposes only, bidders are requested to state in their electronic bids the net interest cost to the City, as described under “CONDITIONS OF THE SALE - Basis of Award” below. All electronic bids shall be deemed to incorporate the provisions of this Official Notice of Sale, the Official Bid Form, and the Preliminary Official Statement.

Facsimile Bidding Procedure . . . Interested bidders may, at their option, submit their bid by facsimile as described below.

Mr. Westerman will accept bids by facsimile until 10:00 A.M., Central Time, on Tuesday, March 20, 2018 at (210) 832-9794. Each bid received by facsimile will be attached to the corresponding signed Official Bid Form as mentioned above, after which Mr. Westerman will, on behalf of the bidders, submit such bids on the bid forms to the City in the manner provided above. Mr. Westerman will not be responsible for submitting bids received after the Tuesday, March 20, 2018 10:00 A.M., Central Time deadline.

Neither the City nor SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc. is responsible for any failure of their or the sender's facsimile machine, any failed delivery of a facsimile, any incomplete or ambiguous transmittals, or the disclosure of the bid to any persons prior to bid opening. If any portion of a facsimile bid is illegible, the City and SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc. may, at their option, either call any provided reference number for clarification or reject the bid. **Bidders who fax bids do so at their own risk. All such bids shall be binding on the bidder.**

AWARD OF CERTIFICATES. The City intends to award the Certificates on the basis of the lowest net interest cost bid. The interest cost of each bid will be computed by determining, at the rate or rates specified, the total dollar value of all interest on the Certificates to their respective stated maturities.

THE CERTIFICATES

DESCRIPTION. The Certificates will be dated March 15, 2018 (the “Dated Date”) with interest to accrue from the Dated Date and to be payable initially on September 1, 2018 and semiannually on March 1 and September 1 thereafter until stated maturity or prior redemption. The definitive Certificates will be issued as fully registered obligations in book-entry form only and when issued will be registered in the name of Cede & Co., as nominee of The Depository Trust Company (“DTC”), New York, New York. DTC will act as securities depository (the “Securities Depository”). Book-entry interests in the Certificates will be made available for purchase in the principal amount of \$5,000 or any integral multiple thereof. Purchasers of the Certificates (“Beneficial Owners”) will not receive physical delivery of Certificates representing their interest in the Certificates purchased. So long as DTC or its nominee is the registered owner of the Certificates, the principal of and interest on the Certificates will be paid by ZB, National Association, dba Amegy Bank, Houston, Texas, as Paying Agent/Registrar, to the Securities Depository, which will in turn remit such principal and interest to its participants, which will in turn remit such principal and interest to the Beneficial Owners of the Certificates. (See “BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM” in the Preliminary Official Statement.) The Certificates will be stated to mature on September 1 in each of the following years in the following amounts:

<u>Stated Maturity September 1</u>	<u>Principal* Amount (\$)</u>	<u>Stated Maturity September 1</u>	<u>Principal* Amount (\$)</u>
2019	200,000	2029	235,000
2020	200,000	2030	250,000
2021	200,000	2031	250,000
2022	200,000	2032	250,000
2023	200,000	2033	250,000
2024	200,000	2034	250,000
2025	200,000	2035	500,000
2026	200,000	2036	500,000
2027	210,000	2037	500,000
2028	225,000	2038	1,455,000

* Preliminary, subject to change (see “THE CERTIFICATES - Adjustment of Principal Amount and Maturity Schedule for the Certificates” and “CONDITIONS OF THE SALE - Basis of Award”).

ADJUSTMENT OF PRINCIPAL AMOUNT AND MATURITY SCHEDULE FOR THE CERTIFICATES. After final computation of the bids, the City reserves the right in its sole discretion either to decrease or increase the principal amount of any stated maturity of the Certificates. The aggregate principal amount of the Certificates may be adjusted by no more than 10% of the proposed par amount by the City Council. Such adjustment(s), if any, shall be made within four (4) hours of the initial award of the Certificates. The price at which such adjusted principal amount of Certificates will be sold will be the same price per \$1,000 of Certificates as the price per \$1,000 for the original par amount of Certificates bid. In order to calculate the yield on the Certificates for federal tax law purposes and as a condition precedent to the award of the Certificates, bidders must disclose to the City in connection with their respective bids the price (or yield to stated maturity) at which each stated maturity of the Certificates will be reoffered and sold for (or expected to be sold) to the public.

In the event of any adjustment of the maturity schedule for the Certificates as described herein, no rebidding or recalculation of the proposals submitted will be required or permitted. Any such adjustment of the aggregate principal amount of the Certificates and/or the maturity schedule for the Certificates made by the City or its Financial Advisor shall be subsequent to the award of the Certificates to the winning bidder as determined pursuant to "CONDITIONS OF THE SALE - Basis of Award" herein and shall not affect such determination. The successful bidder may not withdraw its bid as a result of any changes made within the aforementioned limits.

There is no guarantee that adjustments and/or revisions will not be necessary in order to properly size the Certificates. Accordingly, the City reserves the right in its sole discretion to make adjustments as previously described above, even if the issue size of the Certificates does not change from the original par amount of Certificates. In the event of any such adjustment and or revision, no rebidding will be permitted, and the purchase price as may have been bid on the Certificates shall be adjusted accordingly.

PURPOSE. The proceeds of the Certificates will be used for the purpose of making permanent public improvements and for other public purposes, to-wit: (1) constructing street improvements (including utilities repairs, replacement, and relocation), curbs, gutters, and sidewalk improvements, including drainage and landscaping incidental thereto; (2) designing, constructing, acquiring, purchasing, renovating, enlarging, and improving the City's public safety facilities and equipment, including the Central Fire Station, Fire Station No. 2, and Fire Station No. 3, (3) designing, constructing, acquiring, purchasing, renovating, enlarging, and improving the Issuer's parks and recreational facilities and equipment, (4) designing, constructing, acquiring, purchasing, renovating, enlarging, and improving the City's public safety facilities and equipment, including police department parking lot construction; (5) the purchase of materials, supplies, equipment, machinery, landscaping, land, and rights-of-way for authorized needs and purposes relating to the aforementioned capital improvements; and (6) the payment of professional services related to the design, construction, project management, and financing of the aforementioned projects. See "SOURCES AND USES OF FUNDS" in the Preliminary Official Statement.

OPTIONAL REDEMPTION. The City reserves the right, at its option, to redeem Certificates having a stated maturity on September 1, 2027, in whole or in part, in principal amounts of \$5,000 or any integral multiple thereof, on September 1, 2026, or on any date thereafter, at a price of par, plus accrued interest to the date fixed for redemption.

SERIAL CERTIFICATES AND/OR TERM CERTIFICATES. Bidders may provide that all the Certificates be issued as serial certificates maturing in accordance with the Maturity Schedule shown above or may provide that any two or more consecutive annual principal amounts be combined into one or more term certificates (the "Term Certificates") provided that such Term Certificates shall be subject to mandatory sinking fund redemption in the amounts and in the years described in the Maturity Schedule above as if such Term Certificates remained serial certificates.

BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM. The City intends to utilize the Book-Entry-Only System of The Depository Trust Company, New York, New York ("DTC") with respect to the issuance of the Certificates. (See "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" in the Official Statement.)

PAYING AGENT/REGISTRAR. The initial Paying Agent/Registrar shall be ZB, National Association, dba Amegy Bank, Houston, Texas (see "REGISTRATION, TRANSFER AND EXCHANGE" in the Preliminary Official Statement). If the Paying Agent/Registrar becomes unable for any reason to act as Paying Agent/Registrar, the City has covenanted to appoint a successor Paying Agent/Registrar.

SECURITY FOR PAYMENT. The Certificates constitute direct obligations of the City payable from an annual ad valorem tax levied, within the limits prescribed by law, against all taxable property located therein.

OFFICIAL STATEMENT AND OTHER TERMS AND COVENANTS IN THE ORDINANCE. Further details regarding the Certificates and certain covenants of the City contained in the Ordinance are set forth in the Preliminary Official Statement to which reference is made for all purposes.

CONDITIONS OF THE SALE

THE INITIAL CERTIFICATES AND DENOMINATIONS OF CERTIFICATES. The Certificates will be issued only as fully registered obligations in the denomination of \$5,000 or any integral multiple thereof within a maturity.

TYPES OF BIDS AND INTEREST RATES. The Certificates will be sold in one block on an "All or None" basis, and at a price of not less than 103.25% of their principal amount plus accrued interest from the Dated Date to the date of initial delivery of the Certificates to the Initial Purchaser (defined herein); provided, however, that any bid is subject to adjustment as described under the caption "THE CERTIFICATES - Adjustment of Principal Amount and Maturity Schedule for the Certificates," which adjustment could result in the price of the Certificates of the bidders premium to exceed the parameters provided above. Bidders are invited to name the rate or rates of interest the Certificates shall bear, provided that each rate bid must be stated in multiples of 1/8th of 1% or 1/20th of 1%, and the maximum rate bid must not exceed 6.00%. The highest rate bid may not exceed the lowest rate bid by more than 2.50% in rate. No limitation is imposed upon bidders as to the number of rates or changes that may be used, provided that all Certificates of one maturity must bear one and the same rate.

No bids with supplemental interest rates will be considered. Each bidder shall state in its bid the total interest cost in dollars and the net effective interest rate determined thereby, which shall be considered informative only and not a part of the bid.

BASIS OF AWARD. For the purpose of awarding sale of the Certificates, the interest cost of each bid will be computed by determining the total cost of all interest on the Certificates from the Dated Date to their respective stated maturities, using the table of Certificate Years herein. Subject to the City's right to reject any or all bids and to waive irregularities, except time of filing, the Certificates will be awarded to the bidder (the "Initial Purchaser" or "Purchaser") whose bid, based on the above computation, produces the lowest net interest cost to the City. In case of a tie, the City reserves the right to determine which bidder will be awarded the Certificate in accordance with applicable Texas law.

After selecting the winning bid, the principal authorization schedule may be adjusted as determined by the City's City Council and its Financial Advisor in cooperation with the Purchaser in \$5,000 increments to reflect the actual interest rates and to create level debt service to the City. Such adjustments will not change the principal amounts due on the Certificates in any year by more than 10.00%. The City will, in good faith, attempt to communicate such adjustment to the Initial Purchaser within four (4) hours after the opening of the bids.

GOOD FAITH DEPOSIT. A Good Faith Deposit, in the form of a Cashier's Check payable to "City of Seguin, Texas," in the amount of \$129,500.00* is required. The Good Faith Deposit of the Purchaser will be retained uncashed by the City until the Certificates are delivered. At that time, it will be returned to the Purchaser uncashed; however, should the Purchaser fail or refuse to take up and pay for the Certificates, said check is to be cashed by the City and the proceeds accepted as full and complete liquidated damages. The above-mentioned Good Faith Deposit may accompany the bid or it may be submitted separately. However, if submitted separately, it shall be made available to the City prior to the opening of the bids. It shall be accompanied by instructions from the bank on which it is drawn which will authorize its use as a Good Faith Deposit by the Purchaser who shall be named in such instructions. No interest will be paid or allowed on any Good Faith Deposit. Checks accompanying the bids of unsuccessful bidders will be returned immediately after the bids are opened and the award of the sale of the Certificates has been made.

ADDITIONAL CONDITION OF AWARD - DISCLOSURE OF INTERESTED PARTY FORM:

New obligation of the City to receive information from winning bidder if bidder is not a publicly traded business entity (a "Privately Held Bidder"). Effective January 1, 2018, pursuant to Texas Government Code Section 2252.908 (the "Interested Party Disclosure Act"), the City may not award the Certificates to a winning bidder which is a Privately Held Bidder unless such party submits a Certificate of Interested Parties Form 1295 (the "Disclosure Form") to the City as prescribed by the Texas Ethics Commission ("TEC"). In the event that a Privately Held Bidder's bid for the Certificates is the best bid received, the City, acting through its financial advisor, will promptly notify the winning Privately Held Bidder. That notification will serve as the City's conditional verbal acceptance of the bid, and will obligate the winning Privately Held Bidder to establish (unless such winning Privately Held Bidder has previously so established) an account with the TEC, and promptly file a completed Disclosure Form, as described below, in order to allow the City to complete the award.

Process for completing the Disclosure Form. For purposes of illustration, the Disclosure Form is attached hereto, and reference should be made to such form for the following information needed to complete it: (a) item 2 - name of the governmental entity (City of Seguin, Texas) and (b) item 3 - the identification number assigned to this contract by the City (SeguinCO Ser2018-Bid Form) and description of the goods or services (Purchase of the City

* Preliminary, subject to change (see "THE CERTIFICATES - Adjustment of Principal Amount and Maturity Schedule for the Certificate" and "CONDITIONS OF THE SALE - Basis of Award").

of Seguin, Texas Combination Tax and Limited Pledge Revenue Certificates of Obligation, Series 2018). The Interested Party Disclosure Act and the rules adopted by the TEC with respect thereto (the "Disclosure Rules") require a non-publically traded business entity contracting with the City to complete the Disclosure Form electronically at <https://www.ethics.state.tx.us/main/file.htm>, print, sign, notarize, and deliver, in physical form, the certified Disclosure Form that is generated by the TEC's "electronic portal" to the City. The notarized Disclosure Form must be sent by email, to the City's financial advisor at dwesterman@samcocapital.com, as soon as possible following the notification of conditional verbal acceptance and prior to the final written award. Upon receipt of the final written award, the Disclosure Form with original signatures must be submitted by mail to Clay Binford, c/o Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP, 300 Convent Street, Suite 2100, San Antonio, Texas 78205, along with a PDF executed version sent to clayton.binford@nortonrosefulbright.com.

Preparations for completion, and the significance of, the reported information. In accordance with the Interested Party Disclosure Act, the information reported by the winning Privately Held Bidder MUST BE ACKNOWLEDGED BY AND SUBMITTED UNDER A NOTARY STAMP. No exceptions may be made to that requirement. The Interested Party Disclosure Act and the Disclosure Form provides that such acknowledgment is made "under penalty of perjury." Consequently, a winning Privately Held Bidder should take appropriate steps prior to completion of the Disclosure Form to familiarize itself with the Interested Party Disclosure Act, the Disclosure Rules and the Disclosure Form. Time will be of the essence in submitting the form to the City, and no final award will be made by the City regarding the sale of the Certificates until a completed Disclosure Form is received. If applicable, the City reserves the right to reject any bid that does not satisfy the requirement of a completed Disclosure Form, as described herein. Neither the City nor its consultants have the ability to verify the information included in a Disclosure Form, and neither party has an obligation nor undertakes responsibility for advising any bidder with respect to (1) the bidder's obligation to submit the Disclosure Form or (2) the proper completion of the Disclosure Form. Consequently, an entity intending to bid on the Certificates should consult its own advisors to the extent it deems necessary and be prepared to submit the completed form, if required, promptly upon notification from the City that its bid is the conditional winning bid. Instructional videos on logging in and creating a certificate are provided on the TEC's website at https://www.ethics.state.tx.us/whatsnew/elf_info_form1295.htm.

ADDITIONAL CONDITION OF AWARD - COMPLIANCE WITH H.B. 89 AND S.B. 252, 85TH TEXAS LEGISLATURE: To the extent the sale of Certificates that is the subject of this Notice of Sale constitutes a contract for goods or services within the meaning of Section 2270.002 of the Texas Government Code, each bidder, through submittal of an executed Official Bid Form, verifies that, except to the extent otherwise required by applicable Federal law, it does not boycott Israel through the term of the agreement set forth in the Official Bid Form. For purposes of this verification, "boycott Israel" means refusing to deal with, terminating business activities with, or otherwise taking any action that is intended to penalize, inflict economic harm on, or limit commercial relations specifically with Israel, or with a person or entity doing business in Israel or in an Israeli-controlled territory, but does not include an action made for ordinary business purposes.

Each bidder, through submittal of the executed Official Bid Form, acknowledges that it is not a company (as defined in Section 2270.0001(2), Texas Government Code) engaged in business with Iran, Sudan, or any "foreign terrorist organizations" (as defined in Section 2252.151(2), Texas Government Code), except to the extent permitted under federal law, if at all, and that it is not on a list prepared and maintained by the Texas Comptroller of Public Accounts under Sections 2270.0201 or 2252.153, Texas Government Code.

IMPACT OF BIDDING SYNDICATE ON AWARD: For purposes of contracting for the sale of the Certificates, the entity signing the Official Bid Form as Purchaser shall be solely responsible for the payment of the purchase price of the Certificates. The Purchaser may serve as a syndicate manager and contract under a separate agreement with other syndicate members. However, the City is not a party to that agreement and any information provided regarding syndicate managers would be for informational purposes only.

DELIVERY OF THE CERTIFICATES AND ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS

INITIAL DELIVERY OF INITIAL CERTIFICATE. Initial delivery of the Certificates to the Purchaser (the "Initial Delivery") will be accomplished by the issuance of one Initial Certificate (also called the "Certificates"), either in typed or printed form, in the aggregate principal amount of \$6,475,000.00,* payable in stated installments to the Purchaser, signed by manual or facsimile signature by the Mayor and City Secretary of the City Council of the City of Seguin, Texas, approved by the Texas Attorney General, and registered and manually signed by the Comptroller of Public Accounts. Initial Delivery of the Certificates will be at the designated office of the Paying Agent/Registrar. Upon delivery of the Initial Certificates, they shall be immediately canceled and one definitive Certificate for each maturity payable to Cede & Co. will be exchanged therefore and delivered to DTC in connection with DTC's Book-Entry-Only System. Payment for the Certificates must be made in immediately available funds for unconditional credit to the City, or as otherwise directed by the City. The Purchaser will be

* Preliminary, subject to change (see "THE CERTIFICATES - Adjustment of Principal Amount and Maturity Schedule for the Certificates" and "CONDITIONS OF THE SALE - Basis of Award").

given seven (7) business days' notice of the time fixed for delivery of the Certificates. It is anticipated that delivery of the Initial Certificate can be made on or about April 12, 2018. If for any reason the City is unable to make delivery by April 12, 2018, then the City shall immediately contact the Purchaser and offer to allow the Purchaser to extend for an additional up to thirty (30) days its obligation to take up and pay for the Certificates. If the Purchaser does not so elect within six (6) days thereafter, then its Good Faith Deposit will be returned and both the City and the Purchaser shall be relieved of further obligation. In no event shall the City be liable for any damages by reason of its failure to deliver the Certificates, provided such failure is due to circumstances beyond the City's reasonable control.

DTC DEFINITIVE CERTIFICATES. After delivery of the Initial Certificate, the Certificates will be issued in Book-Entry-Only form. Cede & Co. is the nominee for DTC. All references herein to the registered owner of the Certificate shall mean Cede & Co. and not the Beneficial Owners of the Certificates. Purchasers of beneficial interests in the Certificates will be made in Book-Entry-Only form (without registered Certificates) in the denomination of \$5,000 principal amount or any integral multiple thereof. Under certain limited circumstances described herein, the City may determine to forego immobilization of the Certificates at DTC, or another securities depository, in which case such beneficial interests would become exchangeable for one or more fully registered obligations of like principal amount for the Certificates.

CUSIP NUMBERS. It is anticipated that CUSIP identification numbers will appear on the Certificates, but neither the failure to print or type such number on any Certificate nor any error with respect thereto shall constitute cause for a failure or refusal by the Purchaser to accept delivery of and pay for the Certificates in accordance with the terms of the Official Bid Form and this Official Notice of Sale. All expenses in relation to the printing of CUSIP numbers on the Certificates shall be paid by the City; however, the CUSIP Service Bureau charge for the assignment of the numbers shall be paid by the Purchaser.

CONDITIONS OF DELIVERY. The Purchaser's obligation to take up and pay for the Certificates is subject to the issuance of an approving opinion of the Texas Attorney General, the Purchaser's acknowledgment of the receipt of the Initial Certificate, the opinion and the Purchaser's receipt of the legal opinion of Bond Counsel (hereafter defined), the no-litigation certificate, and a certificate as to Official Statement, all as described in the Preliminary Official Statement.

In order to provide the City with information required to enable it to comply with certain conditions of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (the "Code") relating to the exclusion of interest on the Certificates from the gross income of their owners, the Purchaser will be required to complete, execute, and deliver to the City (on or before the date of Initial Delivery of the Certificates) a certification as to their "issue price" (the "Issue Price Certificate") in the form and to the effect attached hereto or accompanying this Official Notice of Sale, subject to the conditions set forth in "ESTABLISHMENT OF ISSUE PRICE" below.

ESTABLISHMENT OF ISSUE PRICE:

(a) The winning bidder shall assist the City in establishing the issue price of the Certificates and shall execute and deliver to the City by the date of Initial Delivery an "issue price" or similar certificate setting forth the reasonably expected initial offering price to the public, together with the supporting pricing wires or equivalent communications, such issue price certificate substantially in the form attached hereto, with such modifications as may be appropriate or necessary, in the reasonable judgment of the winning bidder, the City, and Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP, the City's Bond Counsel (but not to the extent that would preclude the establishment of issue price of the Certificates under applicable federal regulations). All actions to be taken by the City under this Official Notice of Sale to establish the issue price of the Certificates may be taken on behalf of the City by the City's Financial Advisor and any notice or report to be provided to the City may be provided to the City's Financial Advisor.

(b) The City intends that the provisions of Treasury Regulation Section 1.148-1(f)(3)(i) (defining "competitive sale" for purposes of establishing the issue price of the Certificates) will apply to the initial sale of the Certificates (the "competitive sale requirements") because:

- (1) the City shall disseminate this Official Notice of Sale to potential underwriters (defined below) in a manner that is reasonably designed to reach potential underwriters;
- (2) all bidders shall have an equal opportunity to bid;
- (3) the City may receive bids from at least three underwriters of municipal bonds who have established industry reputations for underwriting new issuances of municipal bonds; and
- (4) the City anticipates awarding the sale of the Certificates to the bidder who submits a firm offer to purchase the Certificates at the highest price (or lowest interest cost), as set forth in this Official Notice of Sale.

Any bid submitted pursuant to this Official Notice of Sale shall be considered a firm offer for the purchase of the Certificates, as specified in the bid.

- (c) In the event that the competitive sale requirements are not satisfied, the City shall so advise the winning bidder. In such event, the City intends to treat the initial offering price to the public (defined below) as of the sale date (defined below) of each maturity of the Certificates as the issue price of that maturity (the "hold-the-offering-price rule"). The City shall promptly advise the winning bidder, at or before the time of award of the Certificates, if the competitive sale requirements were not satisfied, in which case the hold-the-offering-price rule shall apply to the Certificates. **Bids will not be subject to cancellation in the event that the competitive sale requirements are not satisfied and the hold-the-offering-price rule applies.** In the event that the competitive sale requirements are not satisfied, resulting in the application of the hold-the-offering price rule, the issue price certificate shall be modified as necessary in the reasonable judgment of Bond Counsel and the City.
- (d) By submitting a bid, the winning bidder shall (i) confirm that the underwriters have offered or will offer the Certificates to the public on or before the date of award at the offering price or prices (the "initial offering price"), or at the corresponding yield or yields, set forth in the bid submitted by the winning bidder and (ii) agree, on behalf of the underwriters participating in the purchase of the Certificates, that the underwriters will neither offer nor sell unsold Certificates of any maturity to which the hold-the-offering-price rule applies to any person at a price that is higher than the initial offering price to the public during the period starting on the sale date and ending on the earlier of the following:
- (1) the close of the fifth (5th) business day after the sale date; or
 - (2) the date on which the underwriters have sold at least 10% of that maturity of the Certificates to the public at a price that is no higher than the initial offering price to the public.

The winning bidder shall promptly advise the City when the underwriters have sold 10% of that maturity of the Certificates to the public at a price that is no higher than the initial offering price to the public, if that occurs prior to the close of the fifth (5th) business day after the sale date.

(e) If the competitive sale requirements are not satisfied, then until the 10% test has been satisfied as to each maturity of the Certificates, the winning bidder agrees to promptly report to the City the prices at which the unsold Certificates of that maturity have been sold to the public. That reporting obligation shall continue, whether or not the date of Initial Delivery has occurred, until the 10% test has been satisfied as to the Certificates of that maturity or until all Certificates of that maturity have been sold. The 10% test shall be considered satisfied with respect to a maturity when at least 10% of the Certificates of that maturity have been sold to the public at a particular price.

(f) The City acknowledges that, in making the representation set forth above, the winning bidder will rely on (i) the agreement of each underwriter to comply with the hold-the-offering-price rule, as set forth in an agreement among underwriters and the related pricing wires, (ii) in the event a selling group has been created in connection with the initial sale of the Certificates to the public, the agreement of each dealer who is a member of the selling group to comply with the hold-the-offering-price rule, as set forth in a selling group agreement and the related pricing wires, and (iii) in the event that an underwriter is a party to a retail distribution agreement that was employed in connection with the initial sale of the Certificates to the public, the agreement of each broker-dealer that is a party to such agreement to comply with the hold-the-offering-price rule, as set forth in the retail distribution agreement and the related pricing wires. The City further acknowledges that each underwriter shall be solely liable for its failure to comply with its agreement regarding the hold-the-offering-price rule and that no underwriter shall be liable for the failure of any other underwriter, or of any dealer who is a member of a selling group, or of any broker-dealer that is a party to a retail distribution agreement to comply with its corresponding agreement regarding the hold-the-offering-price rule as applicable to the Certificates.

(g) By submitting a bid, each bidder confirms that: (i) any agreement among underwriters, any selling group agreement and each retail distribution agreement (to which the bidder is a party) relating to the initial sale of the Certificates to the public, together with the related pricing wires, contains or will contain language obligating each underwriter, each dealer who is a member of the selling group, and each broker-dealer that is a party to such retail distribution agreement, as applicable, to (A) report the prices at which it sells to the public the unsold Certificates of each maturity allotted to it until it is notified by the winning bidder that either the 10% test has been satisfied as to the Certificates of that maturity or all Certificates of that maturity have been sold to the public and (B) to comply with the hold-the-offering-price rule, if applicable, in each case if and for so long as directed by the winning bidder and as set forth in the related pricing wires, and (ii) any agreement among underwriters relating to the initial sale of the Certificates to the public, together with the related pricing wires, contains or will contain language obligating each underwriter that is a party to a retail distribution agreement to be employed in connection with the initial sale of the Certificates to the public to require each broker-dealer that is a party to such retail distribution agreement to (A) report the prices at which it sells to the public the unsold Certificates of each maturity allotted to it until it is notified by the winning bidder or such underwriter that either the 10% test has been satisfied as to the Certificates of that maturity or all Certificates of that maturity have been sold to the public and (B) comply with the hold-the-

offering-price rule, if applicable, in each case if and for so long as directed by the winning bidder or such underwriter and as set forth in the related pricing wires.

(h) Sales of any Certificates to any person that is a related party (defined below) to an underwriter shall not constitute sales to the public for purposes of this Official Notice of Sale. Further, for purposes of this section of the Official Notice of Sale entitled "ESTABLISHMENT OF ISSUE PRICE:"

- (1) "public" means any person other than an underwriter or a related party;
- (2) "underwriter" means (A) any person that agrees pursuant to a written contract with the City (or with the lead underwriter to form an underwriting syndicate) to participate in the initial sale of the Certificates to the public and (B) any person that agrees pursuant to a written contract directly or indirectly with a person described in clause (A) to participate in the initial sale of the Certificates to the public (including a member of a selling group or a party to a retail distribution agreement participating in the initial sale of the Certificates to the public);
- (3) a purchaser of any of the Certificates is a "related party" to an underwriter if the underwriter and the purchaser are subject, directly or indirectly, to (i) at least 50% common ownership of the voting power or the total value of their stock, if both entities are corporations (including direct ownership by one corporation of another), (ii) more than 50% common ownership of their capital interests or profits interests, if both entities are partnerships (including direct ownership by one partnership of another), or (iii) more than 50% common ownership of the value of the outstanding stock of the corporation or the capital interests or profit interests of the partnership, as applicable, if one entity is a corporation and the other entity is a partnership (including direct ownership of the applicable stock or interests by one entity of the other); and
- (4) "sale date" means the date that the Certificates are awarded by the City to the winning bidder.

LEGAL OPINIONS. The City will furnish to the representative of the Purchaser a complete transcript of proceedings incident to the authorization and issuance of the Certificates, including the approving legal opinion of the Attorney General of the State of Texas, that the Certificates are valid and legally binding obligations of the City and, based upon examination of such transcript of proceedings, the legal opinion of Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP, San Antonio, Texas ("Bond Counsel"). In addition, the City will receive an opinion from Bond Counsel to the effect that the interest on the Certificates, assuming continued compliance with the provisions of the Ordinance, (1) is excludable from the gross income of the owners thereof for federal income tax purposes under the law existing on the date of Initial Delivery of the Certificates, and (2) will not be included in computing the alternative minimum taxable income of the owners thereof who are individuals or, except as described under "TAX MATTERS" in the Preliminary Official Statement, corporations. The opinion of Bond Counsel will be attached to the Certificates delivered to DTC. (See "TAX MATTERS" in the Preliminary Official Statement.)

NO-LITIGATION CERTIFICATE. The City will furnish an executed certificate to the Purchaser to the effect that no litigation of any nature has been filed or is then pending to restrain or enjoin the issuance or delivery of the Certificates, or which would affect the provisions for their payment or security, or in any manner questioning the validity of said Certificates.

CERTIFICATION OF OFFICIAL STATEMENT. At the time of payment for, and initial delivery of, the Initial Certificate, the City will execute and deliver to the Purchaser a certificate in the form set forth in the Preliminary Official Statement. (See "OTHER PERTINENT INFORMATION - Authorization of the Official Statement" in the Preliminary Official Statement.)

CHANGES IN TAX-EXEMPT STATUS. At any time before the Certificates are tendered for delivery, the Purchaser may withdraw his bid if the interest received by private holders from obligations of the same type and character shall be declared to be taxable income under present federal income tax laws, either by ruling of the Internal Revenue Service or by a decision of any federal court, or shall be declared taxable or be required to be taken into account in computing any federal income taxes, by the terms of any federal income tax law (other than as described in the Preliminary Official Statement under "TAX MATTERS").

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

FINANCIAL ADVISOR. SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc. is employed as Financial Advisor to the City in connection with the issuance of the Certificates and will not submit a bid. SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc., has also been designated as the City's independent registered municipal advisor. The Financial Advisor's fee for services rendered with respect to the sale of the Certificates is contingent upon the issuance and delivery of the Certificates. SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc., in its capacity as Financial Advisor, does not assume any responsibility for the information, covenants and representations contained in any of the legal documents with respect to the federal income tax status of the Certificates, or the possible impact of any present, pending or future actions taken by any legislative or judicial bodies.

NOT AN OFFER TO SELL. The Official Notice of Sale does not alone constitute an offer to sell, but is merely a Notice of Sale of Certificates as directed by the City Council of the City. The offer by the City Council of the City to sell the Certificates to the successful bidder is being made by means of the Official Notice of Sale, the Preliminary Official Statement and the Official Bid Form. Prospective bidders are urged to examine the Preliminary Official Statement carefully to determine the investment quality of the Certificates.

REGISTRATION AND QUALIFICATION OF CERTIFICATES FOR SALE. The sale of the Certificates has not been registered under the federal Securities Act of 1933, as amended, in reliance upon the exemption provided thereunder by Section 3(a)(2); and the Certificates have not been qualified under the Securities Act of Texas in reliance upon various exemptions contained therein; nor have the Certificates been qualified under the securities acts of any jurisdiction in which the Certificates may be sold, assigned, pledged, hypothecated or otherwise transferred. This disclaimer of responsibility for qualification for sale or other disposition of the Certificates shall not be construed as an interpretation of any kind with regard to the availability of any exemption from securities registration provisions.

It is the obligation of the Purchaser to register or qualify the sale of the Certificates under the securities laws of any jurisdiction that so requires. The City agrees to cooperate, at the Purchaser's written request and expense, in registering or qualifying the Certificates, or in obtaining an exemption from registration or qualification in any state where such action is necessary; provided, however, that the City shall not be required to consent to a general consent to service of process in any jurisdiction.

MUNICIPAL BOND RATING. The City has made application to Fitch Ratings, Inc. ("Fitch") and S&P Global Ratings ("S&P") for contract ratings on the Certificates. The results will be made available as soon as possible. See "OTHER PERTINENT INFORMATION - Municipal Bond Ratings" in the Preliminary Official Statement.

OFFICIAL STATEMENT

By accepting the winning bid, the City agrees to the following representations and covenants to assist the Purchaser in complying with Rule 15c2-12, as amended (the "Rule"), of the United States Securities and Exchange Commission ("SEC").

THE PRELIMINARY OFFICIAL STATEMENT AND COMPLIANCE WITH THE RULE. The City will approve and authorize the accompanying Preliminary Official Statement and, for the limited purpose of complying with the Rule, will deem such Preliminary Official Statement to be "final" as of its date within the meaning of the Rule for the purpose of review prior to bidding. To the best knowledge and belief of the City, the Preliminary Official Statement contains information, including financial information and operating data, concerning every entity, enterprise, fund, account, or person that is material to an evaluation of the offering of the Certificates. Representations made and to be made by the City concerning the absence of material misstatements and omissions in the Preliminary Official Statement are addressed elsewhere in this Official Notice of Sale and Bidding Instructions and in the Preliminary Official Statement.

The City will furnish to the Purchaser, acting through a designated senior representative, in accordance with instructions received from the Purchaser, within seven (7) business days after the sale date, an aggregate maximum of fifty (50) copies of the final Official Statement, together with information regarding interest rates and other terms relating to the reoffering of the Certificates. The City agrees to provide, or cause to be provided, to the Purchaser the Preliminary Official Statement and the Official Statement and any amendments or supplements thereto in a designated electronic format (or printed format with respect to the final Official Statement) as may be required for the Purchaser to comply with the Rule or the rules of the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board ("MSRB"). The City consents to the distribution of such documents in a designated electronic format. Upon receipt, the Purchaser shall promptly file the Official Statement with the MSRB in accordance with the MSRB Rule G-32. The Purchaser will be responsible for providing information concerning the City and the Certificates to subsequent purchasers of the Certificates, and the City will undertake no responsibility for providing such information other than to make the Official Statement available to the Purchaser as provided herein. The City's obligation to supplement the Official Statement to correct key representations determined to be omitted or materially misleading, after the date of the Official Statement, shall terminate 25 days after the sale date.

The City Council has, in the Ordinance authorizing the issuance of the Certificates, confirmed its approval of the form and content of the Official Statement, and any addenda, supplement or amendment thereto, and authorized its use in the reoffering of the Certificates by the Purchaser.

CONTINUING DISCLOSURE AGREEMENT. The City will agree in the Ordinance to provide certain periodic information and notices of specified events in accordance with the Rule, as described in the Preliminary Official Statement under "CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION." The Purchaser's obligation to accept and pay for the Certificates is conditioned upon delivery to the Purchaser or its agent of a certified copy of the Ordinance containing the agreement described under such heading.

COMPLIANCE WITH PRIOR UNDERTAKINGS. During the past five years, the City has complied in all material respects with all continuing disclosure agreements made by it in accordance with the Rule.

AUTHENTICITY OF FINANCIAL INFORMATION. The financial data and other information contained in the Preliminary Official Statement have been obtained from the City's records, audit reports and other sources which are believed to be reliable. Both the Official Notice of Sale and the Preliminary Official Statement, including the distribution thereof, will be approved by the City Council pursuant to the Ordinance.

The City Council will approve the form and content of the Official Notice of Sale, the Official Bid Form, and the Preliminary Official Statement and will authorize the use thereof in its initial offering of the Certificates. On the date of the sale, the City Council will, in the Ordinance authorizing the issuance of the Certificates, reconfirm its approval of the form and content of the Preliminary Official Statement, and any addenda, supplements, and amendments thereto, and authorize its further use in the reoffering of the Certificates by the Initial Purchaser.

CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS

/s/ _____
Mayor

ATTEST:

/s/ _____
City Secretary

March 13, 2018

(this page intentionally left blank)

CERTIFICATE OF INTERESTED PARTIES

FORM 1295

Complete Nos. 1 - 4 and 6 if there are interested parties.
 Complete Nos. 1, 2, 3, 5, and 6 if there are no interested parties.

OFFICE USE ONLY

1 Name of business entity filing form, and the city, state and country of the business entity's place of business.

2 Name of governmental entity or state agency that is a party to the contract for

City of Seguin, Texas

3 Provide the identification number used by the governmental entity or state agency to track or identify the contract, and provide a description of the goods or services to be provided under the contract.

SeguinCO Ser2018-Bid Form

Purchase of the City of Seguin, Texas Combination Tax and Limited Pledge Revenue Certificates of Obligation, Series 2018

4 Name of Interested Party	City, State, Country (place of business)	Nature of Interest (check applicable)	
		Controlling	Intermediary

5 Check only if there is NO Interested Party.

6 AFFIDAVIT I swear, or affirm, under penalty of perjury, that the above disclosure is true and correct.

 Signature of authorized agent of contracting business entity

AFFIX NOTARY STAMP / SEAL ABOVE

Sworn to and subscribed before me, by the said _____, this the _____ day of _____, 20 _____, to certify which, witness my hand and seal of office.

 Signature of officer administering oath Printed name of officer administering oath Title of officer administering oath

ADD ADDITIONAL PAGES AS NECESSARY

(this page intentionally left blank)

OFFICIAL BID FORM

March 20, 2018

The Honorable Mayor and
Members of the City Council
City of Seguin
210 East Gonzales
Seguin, Texas 78155

Members of the City Council:

Reference is made to your "Official Notice of Sale" and "Preliminary Official Statement" dated March 13, 2018, concerning \$6,475,000* CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS COMBINATION TAX AND LIMITED PLEDGE REVENUE CERTIFICATES OF OBLIGATION, SERIES 2018 (the "Certificates"), which are made a part hereof (the terms of which are hereto agreed as evidenced by our submission of this bid).

For your legally issued Certificates, as described in said "Official Notice of Sale" and "Preliminary Official Statement," we will pay a price of \$_____ (not less than 103.25% of the par value thereof), plus accrued interest, for Certificates maturing on September 1 in the year and in the amount and interest rate shown below:

<u>Principal Amount(\$)</u>	<u>Stated Maturity</u>	<u>Interest Rate(%)</u>	<u>Yield(%)</u>	<u>Principal Amount(\$)</u>	<u>Stated Maturity</u>	<u>Interest Rate(%)</u>	<u>Yield(%)</u>
200,000	2019	_____	_____	235,000	2029	_____	_____
200,000	2020	_____	_____	250,000	2030	_____	_____
200,000	2021	_____	_____	250,000	2031	_____	_____
200,000	2022	_____	_____	250,000	2032	_____	_____
200,000	2023	_____	_____	250,000	2033	_____	_____
200,000	2024	_____	_____	250,000	2034	_____	_____
200,000	2025	_____	_____	500,000	2035	_____	_____
200,000	2026	_____	_____	500,000	2036	_____	_____
210,000	2027	_____	_____	500,000	2037	_____	_____
225,000	2028	_____	_____	1,455,000	2038	_____	_____

As indicated below, Bidder has elected to bid one or more term certificate with each term certificate consisting of two or more consecutive annual principal amounts accumulated from the maturity schedule above (subject to the City's ability to adjust the size of individual maturities) (the "Term Certificates"). For those years of the Certificates which have been combined into Term Certificates, the principal amounts shown in the maturity schedule above shall be redeemed in each such year except for the principal amounts shown in the year of the Term Certificates maturity date which shall be payable at maturity. The Term Certificates created are as follows:

<u>Term Certificate Maturity Date</u>	<u>Year of First Mandatory Redemption</u>	<u>Principal Amount of Term Certificates(\$)*</u>	<u>Interest Rate(%)</u>	<u>Initial Yield(%)</u>
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

Our calculation of the interest cost in accordance with the above bid is:

GROSS INTEREST COST	\$_____
LESS: DOLLAR AMOUNT OF PREMIUM	
NET INTEREST COST	
EFFECTIVE INTEREST RATE	_____%

* Preliminary, subject to change (see "THE CERTIFICATES - Adjustment of Principal Amount and Maturity Schedule for the Certificates" and "CONDITIONS OF THE SALE - Basis of Award").

A Cashier's Check of Frost Bank, in the amount \$129,500.00, which represents our Good Faith Deposit (is attached hereto/has been made available to you prior to the opening of this bid) and is submitted in accordance with the terms as set forth in the Official Notice of Sale. Upon delivery of the Certificate, said check is to be applied to the purchase price of the Certificates, or is to be returned as directed by us.

We agree to accept delivery of and make payment for the Certificates utilizing the book-entry-only system through DTC and make payment for the Initial Certificates in immediately available funds in the Corporate Trust Division, ZB, National Association dba Amegy Bank, Houston, Texas, not later than 10:00 A.M., Central Time, on April 12, 2018, or thereafter on the date the Certificates are tendered for delivery, pursuant to the terms set forth in the Official Notice of Sale.

The "Initial Certificate" shall be registered in the name of _____, which will, upon payment for the Certificates, be cancelled by the Paying Agent/Registrar. The Certificates will then be registered in the name of Cede & Co. (DTC's partnership nominee), under the book-entry-only system.

The undersigned agrees to the provisions of the Official Notice of Sale under the heading "DELIVERY OF THE CERTIFICATES AND ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS - ESTABLISHMENT OF ISSUE PRICE" and, as evidence thereof, agrees to complete, execute and deliver to the City by the date of Initial Delivery of the Certificates, a certificate relating to the "issue price" of the Certificates in the form and to the effect attached to or accompanying the Official Notice of Sale, with such changes thereto as may be acceptable to the City (as provided under "DELIVERY OF THE CERTIFICATES AND ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS - ESTABLISHMENT OF ISSUE PRICE").

Through submittal of this executed Official Bid Form, the undersigned verifies that, except to the extent otherwise required by applicable Federal law, it does not and will not "boycott Israel" and is not a company that engages in business with Iran, Sudan, or any "foreign terrorist organizations" and it is not on the Texas Comptroller's list concerning the same prepared and maintained thereby under applicable Texas law, all as more fully provided in the Official Notice of Sale under the heading "ADDITIONAL CONDITION OF AWARD - COMPLIANCE WITH H.B. 89 AND S.B. 252, 85TH TEXAS LEGISLATURE".

It will be the obligation of the Purchaser of the Certificates to complete and file the DTC Eligibility Questionnaire.

For purposes of contracting for the sale of the Certificates, the entity signing the bid form as Purchaser shall be solely responsible for the payment of the purchase price of the Certificates. The Purchaser may serve as a syndicate manager and contract under a separate agreement with other syndicate members. However, the City is not a party to that agreement and any information provided regarding syndicate managers would be for informational purposes only.

Upon notification of conditional verbal acceptance, the undersigned will submit an electronic form of the Certificate of Interested Parties Form 1295 (the "Disclosure Form") through the Texas Ethics Commission's (the "TEC") electronic portal and the resulting certified Disclosure Form that is generated by the TEC's electronic portal will be printed, signed, notarized and sent by email to the City's financial advisor at dwesterman@samcocapital.com and Bond Counsel at clayton.binford@nortonrosefulbright.com. The undersigned understands that the failure to provide the certified Disclosure Form will prohibit the City from providing final written award of the enclosed bid.

Respectfully submitted,

(Purchaser)

(Signature - Title)

(Telephone)

(The remainder of this page has been left blank intentionally.)

ACCEPTANCE CLAUSE

ACCEPTED this ____ day of March 2018 by the City Council of the City of Seguin, Texas subject to and in accordance with the Official Notice of Sale and the Official Statement.

Title: _____

(this page intentionally left blank)

\$6,475,000*
CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS
COMBINATION TAX AND LIMITED PLEDGE REVENUE
CERTIFICATES OF OBLIGATION, SERIES 2018

ISSUE PRICE CERTIFICATE

The undersigned, on behalf of _____, _____, _____
("_____"), hereby certifies as set forth below with respect to the sale of the above-captioned obligations (the "Certificates") of the City of Seguin, Texas (the "Issuer").

1. Reasonably Expected Initial Offering Price.

(a) As of the Sale Date, the reasonably expected initial offering prices of the Certificates to the Public by _____ are the prices listed in Schedule A (the "Expected Offering Prices"). The Expected Offering Prices are the prices for the Maturities of the Certificates used by _____ in formulating its bid to purchase the Certificates. Attached as Schedule B is a true and correct copy of the bid provided by _____ to purchase the Certificates.

(b) _____ was not given the opportunity to review other bids prior to submitting its bid.

(c) The bid submitted by _____ constituted a firm offer to purchase the Certificates.

2. Defined Terms.

(a) *Maturity* means Certificates with the same credit and payment terms. Certificates with different maturity dates, or Certificates with the same maturity date but different stated interest rates, are treated as separate Maturities.

(b) *Public* means any person (including an individual, trust, estate, partnership, association, company, or corporation) other than an Underwriter or a related party to an Underwriter. The term "related party" for purposes of this certificate generally means any two or more persons who have greater than 50 percent common ownership, directly or indirectly.

(c) *Sale Date* means the first day on which there is a binding contract in writing for the sale of a Maturity of the Certificates. The Sale Date of the Certificates is March 20, 2018.

(d) *Underwriter* means (i) any person that agrees pursuant to a written contract with the Issuer (or with the lead underwriter to form an underwriting syndicate) to participate in the initial sale of the Certificates to the Public, and (ii) any person that agrees pursuant to a written contract directly or indirectly with a person described in clause (i) of this paragraph to participate in the initial sale of the Certificates to the Public (including a member of a selling group or a party to a retail distribution agreement participating in the initial sale of the Certificates to the Public).

The representations set forth in this certificate are limited to factual matters only. Nothing in this certificate represents _____ interpretation of any laws, including specifically sections 103 and 148 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, and the Treasury Regulations thereunder. The undersigned understands that the foregoing information will be relied upon by the Issuer with respect to certain of the representations set forth in the Tax Certificate with respect to the Certificates and with respect to compliance with the federal income tax rules affecting the Certificates, and by Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP in connection with rendering its opinion that the interest on the Certificates is excluded from gross income for federal income tax purposes, the preparation of the Internal Revenue Service Form 8038-G, and other federal income tax advice that it may give to the Issuer from time to time relating to the Certificates.

* Preliminary. Subject to change.

By: _____
Name: _____
Title: _____

Dated: _____

(this page intentionally left blank)

SCHEDULE A
EXPECTED OFFERING PRICES

(this page intentionally left blank)

PRELIMINARY OFFICIAL STATEMENT
Dated March 13, 2018

NEW ISSUE - BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY

Ratings: Fitch - Applied For
S&P - Applied For
(See "OTHER PERTINENT INFORMATION -
Municipal Bond Ratings" herein)

In the opinion of Bond Counsel (defined herein), assuming continuing compliance by the City (defined herein) after the date of initial delivery of the Certificates (defined below) with certain covenants contained in the Ordinance (defined herein) and subject to the matters set forth under "TAX MATTERS" herein, interest on the Certificates for federal income tax purposes under existing statutes, regulations, published rulings, and court decisions (1) will be excludable from the gross income of the owners thereof pursuant to section 103 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended to the date of initial delivery of the Certificates, and (2) will not be included in computing the alternative minimum taxable income of individuals or, except as described herein, corporations. See "TAX MATTERS" herein.

\$6,475,000*
CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS
(A political subdivision of the State of Texas located in Guadalupe County)
COMBINATION TAX AND LIMITED PLEDGE REVENUE
CERTIFICATES OF OBLIGATION, SERIES 2018

Dated Date: March 15, 2018

Due: September 1, as shown on page -ii- herein

The City of Seguin, Texas Combination Tax and Limited Pledge Revenue Certificates of Obligation, Series 2018 (the "Certificates") are being issued pursuant to the Constitution and general laws of the State of Texas (the "State") pursuant to the provisions of the Certificate of Obligation Act of 1971, as amended, Texas Local Government Code Section 271.041 through Section 271.064, Chapter 1502, as amended, Texas Government Code, the City's Home Rule Charter, and an ordinance (the "Ordinance") of the City Council of the City of Seguin, Texas (the "City") to be adopted on March 20, 2018. See "THE CERTIFICATES - Authority for Issuance" herein.

The Certificates constitute direct and general obligations of the City payable primarily from ad valorem taxes levied against all taxable property therein, within the limits prescribed by law (See "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS"). In addition, the Certificates are further secured by a lien on and pledge of the Pledged Revenues (being a limited amount of the Net Revenues derived from the operation of the City's combined electric power, waterworks, and sewer system (the "System") not to exceed \$1,000 during the entire period the Certificates or interest thereon remain outstanding) such lien and pledge, however, being subordinate and inferior to the lien on and pledge of the Net Revenues which are or may be pledged to the payment of the City's currently outstanding Prior Lien Obligations or any Additional Prior Lien Obligations, Junior Lien Obligations, or Subordinate Lien Obligations hereafter issued by the City (as each such term is described and defined in the Ordinance). The City also previously authorized the issuance of the Limited Pledge Obligations (as defined in the Ordinance) that are payable in part from and secured by a lien on and pledge of a limited amount of the Net Revenues of the System in accordance with the ordinances authorizing the issuance of the currently outstanding Limited Pledge Obligations. In the Ordinance, the City has reserved the right to issue Additional Prior Lien Obligations, Junior Lien Obligations, Subordinate Lien Obligations, and Additional Limited Pledge Obligations without limitation as to principal amount but subject to any terms, conditions, or restrictions as may be applicable thereto under law or otherwise. (See "THE CERTIFICATES - Security for Payment" and "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS" herein.)

Interest on the Certificates will accrue from the Dated Date as shown above and will be payable on March 1 and September 1 of each year, commencing September 1, 2018, until stated maturity or prior redemption, and will be calculated on the basis of a 360-day year of twelve 30-day months. The definitive Certificates will be issued as fully registered obligations in book-entry form only and when issued will be registered in the name of Cede & Co., as nominee of The Depository Trust Company ("DTC"), New York, New York. DTC will act as securities depository. Book entry interests in the Certificates will be made available for purchase in the principal amount of \$5,000 or any integral multiple thereof. Purchasers of the Certificates ("Beneficial Owners") will not receive physical delivery of certificates representing their interest in the Certificates purchased. So long as DTC or its nominee is the registered owner of the Certificates, the principal of and interest on the Certificates will be payable by ZB, National Association, dba Amegy Bank, Houston, Texas, as the initial paying agent/registrar (the "Paying Agent/Registrar") to the securities depository, which will in turn remit such principal and interest to its participants, which will in turn remit such principal and interest to the Beneficial Owners of the Certificates. (See "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" herein.)

The proceeds of the Certificates will be used for the purpose of making permanent public improvements and for other public purposes, to-wit: (1) constructing street improvements (including utilities repairs, replacement, and relocation), curbs, gutters, and sidewalk improvements, including drainage and landscaping incidental thereto; (2) designing, constructing, acquiring, purchasing, renovating, enlarging, and improving the City's public safety facilities and equipment, including the Central Fire Station, Fire Station No. 2, and Fire Station No. 3, (3) designing, constructing, acquiring, purchasing, renovating, enlarging, and improving the Issuer's parks and recreational facilities and equipment, (4) designing, constructing, acquiring, purchasing, renovating, enlarging, and improving the City's public safety facilities and equipment, including police department parking lot construction; (5) the purchase of materials, supplies, equipment, machinery, landscaping, land, and rights-of-way for authorized needs and purposes relating to the aforementioned capital improvements; and (6) the payment of professional services related to the design, construction, project management, and financing of the aforementioned projects. See "THE CERTIFICATES - Use of Proceeds."

**FOR MATURITY SCHEDULE, PRINCIPAL AMOUNTS, INTEREST RATES, INITIAL YIELDS, CUSIP NUMBERS,
AND REDEMPTION PROVISIONS FOR THE CERTIFICATES SEE INSIDE PAGE OF THIS FRONT COVER.**

The Certificates are offered for delivery, when, as and if issued and received by the initial purchaser (the "Purchaser") pursuant to a competitive sale subject to the approving opinion of the Attorney General of the State of Texas and the approval of certain legal matters by Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP, Bond Counsel, San Antonio, Texas. See "LEGAL MATTERS" herein for a discussion of Bond Counsel's legal opinion. It is expected that the Certificates will be available for delivery through the services of DTC on or about April 12, 2018.

* Preliminary, subject to change.

BIDS DUE TUESDAY, MARCH 20, 2018 AT 10:00 A.M., CENTRAL TIME

This Preliminary Official Statement and the information contained herein are subject to completion or amendment without notice. These securities may not be sold, nor may offers to buy them be accepted, prior to the time the Official Statement is delivered in final form. Under no circumstances shall this Preliminary Official Statement constitute an offer to sell or a solicitation of an offer to buy, nor shall there be any sale of, these securities in any jurisdiction in which such offer, solicitation or sale would be unlawful prior to registration, qualification or filing under the securities laws of any such jurisdiction.

\$6,475,000*
**COMBINATION TAX AND LIMITED PLEDGE REVENUE
 CERTIFICATES OF OBLIGATION, SERIES 2018**

CUSIP NO. PREFIX⁽¹⁾: 815832

Principal Amount(\$)	Stated Maturity (September 1)	Interest Rate (%)	Initial Yield (%)	CUSIP No. Suffix ⁽¹⁾
200,000	2019			
200,000	2020			
200,000	2021			
200,000	2022			
200,000	2023			
200,000	2024			
200,000	2025			
200,000	2026			
210,000	2027			
225,000	2028			
235,000	2029			
250,000	2030			
250,000	2031			
250,000	2032			
250,000	2033			
250,000	2034			
500,000	2035			
500,000	2036			
500,000	2037			
1,455,000	2038			

(Interest to accrue from the Dated Date)

Optional Redemption

The City reserves the right to redeem the Certificates maturing on and after September 1, 2027, in whole or in part, in the principal amount of \$5,000 or any integral multiple thereof (and, if less than all Certificates within a stated maturity are redeemed, selected by lot by the Paying Agent/Registrar), on September 1, 2026, or any date thereafter, at the redemption price of par plus accrued interest to the date fixed for redemption. If two or more serial certificates of consecutive maturity are combined into one or more "term" Certificates (the "Term Certificates") by the Purchaser, such Term Certificates will be subject to mandatory sinking fund redemption in accordance with the provisions of the Ordinance. See "THE CERTIFICATES - Redemption Provisions of the Certificates" herein

* Preliminary, subject to change.

⁽¹⁾ CUSIP numbers are included solely for the convenience of the owners of the Certificates. CUSIP is a registered trademark of the American Bankers Association. CUSIP data herein is provided by CUSIP Global Services, managed by S&P Global Market Intelligence on behalf of The American Bankers Association. This data is not intended to create a database and does not serve in any way as a substitute for the CUSIP Services. None of the Purchaser, the City, or the Financial Advisor is responsible for the selection or correctness of the CUSIP numbers set forth herein.

CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS
210 East Gonzales
Seguin, Texas 78155

CITY COUNCIL

<u>Name</u>	<u>Position</u>	<u>Years of Service</u>	<u>Term Expires November</u>	<u>Occupation</u>
Don Keil ⁽¹⁾	Mayor	10	2020	Business Owner
Fonda Mathis	Mayor Pro Tem, District 6	4	2020	Businesswoman
Ernest Leal	Councilperson, District 1	4	2020	Business Manager
Jeannette Crabb	Councilperson, District 2	4	2020	Retired
Jim Lievens ⁽²⁾	Councilperson District 3	1	2018	Real Estate
Chris Rangel	Councilperson District 4	2	2020	Education
Carlos Medrano	Councilperson District 5	5	2018	Retired
Donna Dodgen	Councilperson, District 7	4	2018	Businesswoman
Mark Herbold	Councilperson, District 8	3	2018	Insurance

⁽¹⁾ Mr. Keil served as a councilmember from 2006 until his election as Mayor in November 2012. Mr. Keil was reelected as Mayor on November 8, 2016 for another 4-year term.

⁽²⁾ Mr. Jim Lievens was elected in a special election to fill an unexpired term.

ADMINISTRATION

<u>Name</u>	<u>Position</u>	<u>Length of Service With City</u>
Douglas G. Faseler ⁽¹⁾	City Manager	21 years
Ricardo Cortes	Assistant City Manager	11 years
Naomi Manski ⁽²⁾	City Secretary	28 years
Susan Caddell	Director of Finance	27 years
Tracy Stalnaker	Assistant Director of Finance	6 years
Andrew Quittner	City Attorney	8 years

⁽¹⁾ Mr. Faseler was appointed as the City Manager on January 17, 2006. Prior to that date he served as the Assistant City Manager for 10 years.

⁽²⁾ Ms. Manski was appointed as the City Secretary on October 1, 2016.

CONSULTANTS AND ADVISORS

Armstrong, Vaughn & Associates, P.C. Universal City, Texas	Auditors
Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP San Antonio, Texas	Bond Counsel
SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc. San Antonio, Texas	Financial Advisor

For Additional Information Contact:

Duane L. Westerman, Senior Managing Director
 Allen R. Westerman, Managing Director
 SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc.
 1020 N.E. Loop 410., Suite 640
 San Antonio, Texas 78209
 (210) 832-9760
 Fax (210) 832-9794
 Email: dwesterman@samcocapital.com

Douglas G. Faseler, City Manager
 Susan Caddell, Director of Finance
 City of Seguin
 Post Office Box 591
 Seguin, Texas 78155
 (830) 401-2300
 Fax (830) 401-2450
 Email: scaddell@seguintexas.gov

USE OF INFORMATION IN OFFICIAL STATEMENT

For purposes of compliance with Rule 15c2-12 of the United States Securities and Exchange Commission, as amended (the "Rule") and in effect on the date of this Preliminary Official Statement, this document constitutes an "official statement" of the City with respect to the Certificates that has been "deemed final" by the City as of its date except for the omission of no more than the information permitted by the Rule.

No dealer, broker, salesman, or other person has been authorized by the City to give any information or to make any representation with respect to the Certificates, other than as contained in this Official Statement, and if given or made, such other information or representations must not be relied upon as having been authorized by either of the foregoing.

This Official Statement does not constitute an offer to sell or a solicitation of an offer to buy, nor shall there be any sale of the Certificates by any person, in any jurisdiction in which it is unlawful for such person to make such offer, solicitation, or sale. The information set forth herein has been obtained from sources which are believed to be reliable but is not guaranteed as to accuracy or completeness and is not to be construed as a representation by the Purchaser.

The information and expressions of opinion herein are subject to change without notice, and neither the delivery of this Official Statement nor any sale made hereunder shall under any circumstances create any implication that there has been no change in the information or opinions set forth herein after the date of this Official Statement. The information and expressions of opinion herein are subject to change without notice, and neither the delivery of this Official Statement nor any sale made hereunder will under any circumstances create any implication that there has been no change in the information or opinions set forth herein after the date of this Official Statement.

The Purchaser has provided the following sentence for inclusion in this Official Statement. The Purchaser has reviewed the information in this Official Statement in accordance with, and as part of its responsibilities to investors under the federal securities laws as applied to the facts and circumstances of this transaction, but the Purchaser does not guarantee the accuracy or completeness of such information.

THE CERTIFICATES ARE EXEMPT FROM REGISTRATION WITH THE UNITED STATES SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION AND CONSEQUENTLY HAVE NOT BEEN REGISTERED THEREWITH. THE REGISTRATION, QUALIFICATION, OR EXEMPTION OF THE CERTIFICATES IN ACCORDANCE WITH APPLICABLE SECURITIES LAW PROVISIONS OF THE JURISDICTIONS IN WHICH THESE CERTIFICATES HAVE BEEN REGISTERED, QUALIFIED, OR EXEMPTED SHOULD NOT BE REGARDED AS A RECOMMENDATION FOR THE PURCHASE THEREOF.

IN CONNECTION WITH THIS OFFERING, THE PURCHASER MAY OVER-ALLOT OR EFFECT TRANSACTIONS WHICH STABILIZE THE MARKET PRICE OF THIS ISSUE AT A LEVEL ABOVE THAT WHICH MIGHT OTHERWISE PREVAIL IN THE OPEN MARKET. SUCH STABILIZING, IF COMMENCED, MAY BE DISCONTINUED AT ANY TIME.

None of the City, the Financial Advisor, or the Purchaser makes any representation or warranty with respect to the information contained in this Official Statement regarding The Depository Trust Company ("DTC") or its book-entry-only system described under the caption "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" as such information has been provided by DTC.

The agreements of the City and others related to the Certificates are contained solely in the contracts described herein. Neither this Official Statement, nor any other statement made in connection with the offer or sale of the Certificates, is to be construed as constituting an agreement with the purchasers of the Certificates. INVESTORS SHOULD READ THE ENTIRE OFFICIAL STATEMENT, INCLUDING ALL APPENDICES ATTACHED HERETO, TO OBTAIN INFORMATION ESSENTIAL TO MAKING AN INFORMED INVESTMENT DECISION WITH RESPECT TO THE CERTIFICATES.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

COVER PAGE.....	i	Property Subject to Taxation by the City	11
MATURITY SCHEDULE	ii	Valuation of Property for Taxation	11
CITY COUNCIL	iii	Residential Homestead Exemptions	12
ADMINISTRATION.....	iii	Exemptions for Freeport Goods	
CONSULTANTS AND ADVISORS	iii	And Goods-in-Transit	13
USE OF INFORMATION IN OFFICIAL STATEMENT	iv	Tax Abatement	13
OFFICIAL STATEMENT SUMMARY INFORMATION	vi	Tax Increment Financing Reinvestment Zone	14
INTRODUCTION	1	City and Taxpayer Remedies	14
THE CERTIFICATES		The Financial Institutions Act of 1989	14
Authority for Issuance	1	Levy and Collection of Taxes	14
General Description	1	City's Rights in the Event of Tax Delinquencies	14
Use of Proceeds	2	TAX RATE LIMITATIONS	
Security for Payment	2	The Tax Code	15
Redemption Provisions of the Certificates	2	TAX MATTERS	
Selection of Certificates for Redemption	2	Tax Exemption	16
Notice of Redemption	2	Tax Changes	16
Legality	3	Ancillary Tax Consequences	16
Delivery	3	Tax Accounting Treatment of Discount Certificates	16
Payment Record	3	Tax Accounting Treatment of Premium Certificates ...	17
Additional Bond Issues	3	CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION	17
Defeasance	3	LEGAL MATTERS.....	19
Amendments	4	LITIGATION	20
Defaults and Remedies	4	LEGAL INVESTMENTS AND ELIGIBILITY	
REGISTRATION, TRANSFER AND EXCHANGE		TO SECURE PUBLIC FUNDS IN TEXAS	20
Paying Agent/Registrar.....	5	OTHER PERTINENT INFORMATION	
Successor Paying Agent/Registrar	5	Authenticity of Financial Data	
Record Date.....	5	and Other Information	20
Special Record Date for Interest Payment.....	5	Registration and Qualification	
Registration, Transferability and Exchange	5	of Certificates for Sale	20
Limitation on Transferability of Certificates		Municipal Bond Ratings	20
Called for Redemption	6	Financial Advisor	21
Replacement Certificates	6	Initial Purchaser	21
BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM	6	Forward Looking Statements Disclaimer	21
SOURCES AND USES OF FUNDS	8	Information from External Sources	21
INVESTMENT POLICIES	8	Certification of the Official Statement.....	21
PENSION FUND AND OTHER		Authorization of the Official Statement.....	22
POST-EMPLOYMENT BENEFITS	10		
AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES			
Property Tax and County-wide Appraisal District	11		

SELECTED FINANCIAL INFORMATION OF THE CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS.....	APPENDIX A
GENERAL INFORMATION REGARDING THE CITY OF SEGUIN AND ITS ECONOMY	APPENDIX B
EXCERPTS FROM THE CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS AUDITED FINANCIAL STATEMENT	APPENDIX C
FORM OF OPINION OF BOND COUNSEL	APPENDIX D

The cover page hereof, the appendices herein and any addenda, supplement or amendment hereto are part of this Official Statement.

OFFICIAL STATEMENT SUMMARY INFORMATION

The following information is qualified in its entirety by more detailed information and financial statements appearing elsewhere in this Official Statement:

THE ISSUER	The City of Seguin, Texas (the "City") is a political subdivision and municipal corporation of the State of Texas (the "State"), operating pursuant to its Home Rule Charter, located in Guadalupe County, Texas. The City covers approximately 23.87 square miles and is the county seat of Guadalupe County. (See "APPENDIX B - General Information Regarding the City of Seguin and Its Economy.")
THE CERTIFICATES	<p>The Certificates are issued as "City of Seguin, Texas Combination Tax and Limited Pledge Revenue Certificates of Obligation, Series 2018" (the "Certificates"). The Certificates are being issued pursuant to the Constitution and general laws of the State, particularly Subchapter C of Chapter 271, Texas Local Government Code, as amended, Chapter 1502, Texas Government Code, as amended, the City's Home Rule Charter, and an ordinance (the "Ordinance") to be adopted by the City Council of the City on March 20, 2018. (See "THE CERTIFICATES - Authority for Issuance" herein.)</p> <p>Semiannual interest payments begin on September 1, 2018 and continue on each March 1 and September 1 of each year thereafter until stated maturity or prior redemption. The Certificates are being issued in the aggregate principal amount of \$6,475,000.*</p> <p>The Certificates will mature on the dates and in the amounts indicated on page -ii- hereof.</p>
DATED DATE	March 15, 2018.
REDEMPTION	Certificates stated to mature on and after September 1, 2027 are subject to optional redemption, in whole or in part, in principal amounts of \$5,000 or any integral multiple thereof (and, if less than all Certificates within a stated maturity are redeemed, selected by lot by the Paying Agent/Registrar) on September 1, 2026 or any date thereafter, at a price of par (100%) plus accrued interest to the date fixed for redemption. If two or more serial certificates of consecutive maturity are combined into one or more "term" Certificates (the "Term Certificates") by the Purchaser, such Term Certificates will be subject to mandatory sinking fund redemption in accordance with the provisions of the Ordinance. (See "THE CERTIFICATES - Redemption Provisions of the Certificates.")
PAYING AGENT/REGISTRAR	The initial Paying Agent/Registrar is ZB, National Association, dba Amegy Bank, Houston, Texas.
SECURITY FOR THE CERTIFICATES	The Certificates constitute direct and general obligations of the City payable primarily from ad valorem taxes levied annually against all taxable property therein, within the limits prescribed by law. (See "THE CERTIFICATES - Security for Payment" and "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS" herein). In addition, the Certificates are further secured by a lien on and pledge of the Pledged Revenues (being a limited amount of the Net Revenues derived from the operation of the City's combined electric power, waterworks, and sewer system (the "System") not to exceed \$1,000 during the entire period the Certificates or interest thereon remain outstanding) such lien and pledge, however, being subordinate and inferior to the lien on and pledge of the Net Revenues which are or may be pledged to the payment of the City's currently outstanding Prior Lien Obligations or any Additional Prior Lien Obligations, Junior Lien Obligations, or Subordinate Lien Obligations hereinafter issued by the City (as each such term is described and defined in the Ordinance). The City also previously authorized the issuance of the Limited Pledge Obligations (as defined in the Ordinance) that are payable in part from and secured by a lien on and pledge of a limited amount of the Net Revenues of the System in accordance with the ordinances authorizing the issuance of the currently outstanding Limited Pledge Obligations. In the Ordinance, the City has reserved the right to issue Additional Prior Lien Obligations, Junior Lien Obligations, Subordinate Lien Obligations, and Additional Limited Pledge Obligations without limitation as to principal amount but subject to any terms, conditions, or restrictions as may be applicable thereto under law or otherwise. (See "THE CERTIFICATES - Security for Payment" and "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS" herein.)
<p>* Preliminary, subject to change.</p>	

BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM	The City intends to utilize the Book-Entry-Only System of The Depository Trust Company, New York, New York relating to the method and timing of payment as to principal and interest of the Certificates and the method of transfer. (See "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" herein.)
TAX EXEMPTION	In the opinion of Bond Counsel, the interest on the Certificates will be excludable from gross income for federal tax purposes under statutes, regulations, published rulings and court decisions existing on the date thereof, subject to the matters described under the caption "TAX MATTERS" herein, including the alternative minimum tax on corporations.
USE OF PROCEEDS	Proceeds from the sale of the Certificates will be used for the purpose of making permanent public improvements and for other public purposes, to-wit: (1) constructing street improvements (including utilities repairs, replacement, and relocation), curbs, gutters, and sidewalk improvements, including drainage and landscaping incidental thereto; (2) designing, constructing, acquiring, purchasing, renovating, enlarging, and improving the City's public safety facilities and equipment, including the Central Fire Station, Fire Station No. 2, and Fire Station No. 3, (3) designing, constructing, acquiring, purchasing, renovating, enlarging, and improving the Issuer's parks and recreational facilities and equipment, (4) designing, constructing, acquiring, purchasing, renovating, enlarging, and improving the City's public safety facilities and equipment, including police department parking lot construction; (5) the purchase of materials, supplies, equipment, machinery, landscaping, land, and rights-of-way for authorized needs and purposes relating to the aforementioned capital improvements; and (6) the payment of professional services related to the design, construction, project management, and financing of the aforementioned projects. See "THE CERTIFICATES - Use of Proceeds."
RATINGS	The City has made application to Fitch Ratings, Inc. ("Fitch") and S&P Global Ratings ("S&P") for contract ratings on the Certificates. See "OTHER PERTINENT INFORMATION - Municipal Bond Ratings" herein.
FUTURE ISSUES	The City does not anticipate issuing additional general obligation debt in the next twelve months, except potentially refunding bonds for debt service savings. On February 15, 2018 the City closed on a \$649,000 issuance of Tax Notes which were privately placed. The City is also considering the issuance of utility system revenue bonds during 2018.
PAYMENT RECORD	The City has never defaulted on the payment of its general obligation tax debt.
DELIVERY	When issued, anticipated on or about April 12, 2018.
LEGALITY	The Certificates are subject to the approval of legality by the Attorney General of the State of Texas and the approval of certain legal matters by Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP, San Antonio, Texas, as Bond Counsel. (See "APPENDIX D - Form of Opinion of Bond Counsel" herein.)

(this page intentionally left blank)

PRELIMINARY OFFICIAL STATEMENT

RELATED TO

\$6,475,000*

CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS

(A political subdivision of the State of Texas located in Guadalupe County, Texas)

COMBINATION TAX AND LIMITED PLEDGE REVENUE

CERTIFICATES OF OBLIGATION, SERIES 2018

INTRODUCTION

This Official Statement of the City of Seguin, Texas (the "City") is provided to furnish certain information in connection with the sale of the City's \$6,475,000* Combination Tax and Limited Pledge Revenue Certificates of Obligation, Series 2018 (the "Certificates").

This Official Statement, which includes the cover page and the appendices hereto, provides certain information about the City and its finances. All descriptions of documents contained herein are only summaries and are qualified in their entirety by reference to each such document. Copies of such documents may be obtained upon request from the City and, during the offering period, from the City's Financial Advisor, SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc., 1020 N.E. Loop 410, Suite 640, San Antonio, Texas 78209, by electronic mail or upon payment of reasonable copying, mailing, and handling charges.

This Official Statement speaks only as to its date, and the information contained herein is subject to change. A copy of the Official Statement pertaining to the Certificates will be filed by the Purchaser with the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board through its Electronic Municipal Markets Access ("EMMA") system. See "CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION" herein for a description of the City's undertaking to provide certain information on a continuing basis. Capitalized terms used, but not defined herein, shall have the meanings ascribed thereto in the Ordinance (defined below).

THE CERTIFICATES

Authority for Issuance

The Certificates are being issued pursuant to the Constitution and general laws of the State of Texas (the "State") pursuant to the provisions of the Certificate of Obligation Act of 1971, as amended, Texas Local Government Code Section 271.041 through Section 271.064, Chapter 1502, as amended, Texas Government Code, the City's Home Rule Charter, and the Ordinance.

General Description

The Certificates are dated March 15, 2018 (the "Dated Date") and will accrue interest from the Dated Date, and such interest shall be payable on March 1 and September 1 in each year, commencing September 1, 2018, until stated maturity or prior redemption. The Certificates will mature on the dates, in the principal amounts and will bear interest at the rates set forth on the inside cover page of this Official Statement.

Interest on the Certificates is payable to the registered owners appearing on the bond registration books of the Paying Agent/Registrar on the Record Date (defined below) and such interest shall be paid by the Paying Agent/Registrar (i) by check sent by United States mail, first class postage prepaid, to the address of the registered owner recorded in the bond register or (ii) by such other method, acceptable to the Paying Agent/Registrar, requested by, and at the risk and expense of, the registered owner. The principal of the Certificates is payable at maturity or redemption, upon their presentation and surrender to the Paying Agent/Registrar. The Certificates will be issued only in fully registered form in any integral multiple of \$5,000 principal for any one maturity.

Initially the Certificates will be registered and delivered only to Cede & Co., the nominee of The Depository Trust Company ("DTC") pursuant to the Book-Entry-Only System described herein. **No physical delivery of the Certificates will be made to the owners thereof.** Notwithstanding the foregoing, as long as the Certificates are held in the Book-Entry-Only System, principal of, premium, if any, and interest on the Certificates will be payable by the Paying Agent/Registrar to Cede & Co., which will make distribution of the amounts so paid to the participating members of DTC for subsequent payment to the Beneficial Owners of the Certificates. See "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" herein.

* Preliminary, subject to change.

Use of Proceeds

Proceeds from the sale of the Certificates will be used for the purpose of making permanent public improvements and for other public purposes, to-wit: (1) constructing street improvements (including utilities repairs, replacement, and relocation), curbs, gutters, and sidewalk improvements, including drainage and landscaping incidental thereto; (2) designing, constructing, acquiring, purchasing, renovating, enlarging, and improving the Issuer's public safety facilities and equipment, including the Central Fire Station, Fire Station No. 2, and Fire Station No. 3, (3) designing, constructing, acquiring, purchasing, renovating, enlarging, and improving the City's parks and recreational facilities and equipment, (4) designing, constructing, acquiring, purchasing, renovating, enlarging, and improving the City's public safety facilities and equipment, including police department parking lot construction; (5) the purchase of materials, supplies, equipment, machinery, landscaping, land, and rights-of-way for authorized needs and purposes relating to the aforementioned capital improvements; and (6) the payment of professional services related to the design, construction, project management, and financing of the aforementioned projects.

Security for Payment

The Certificates constitute direct and general obligations of the City payable primarily from ad valorem taxes levied annually against all taxable property therein, within the limits prescribed by law. See "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS". In addition, the Certificates are further secured by a lien on and pledge of the Pledged Revenues (being a limited amount of the Net Revenues derived from the operation of the City's combined electric power, waterworks, and sewer system (the "System") not to exceed \$1,000 during the entire period the Certificates or interest thereon remain outstanding) such lien and pledge, however, being subordinate and inferior to the lien on and pledge of the Net Revenues which are or may be pledged to the payment of the City's currently outstanding Prior Lien Obligations or any Additional Prior Lien Obligations, Junior Lien Obligations, or Subordinate Lien Obligations hereinafter issued by the City (as each such term is described and defined in the Ordinance). The City also previously authorized the issuance of the Limited Pledge Obligations (as defined in the Ordinance) that are payable in part from and secured by a lien on and pledge of a limited amount of the Net Revenues of the System in accordance with the ordinances authorizing the issuance of the currently outstanding Limited Pledge Obligations. In the Ordinance, the City has reserved the right to issue Additional Prior Lien Obligations, Junior Lien Obligations, Subordinate Lien Obligations, and Additional Limited Pledge Obligations without limitation as to principal amount but subject to any terms, conditions, or restrictions as may be applicable thereto under law or otherwise. See "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS" herein.

Redemption Provisions of the Certificates

The City reserves the right to redeem the Certificates maturing on and after September 1, 2027 in whole or in part, in the principal amount of \$5,000 or any integral multiple thereof, on September 1, 2026 or any date thereafter, at the redemption price of par plus accrued interest to the date fixed for redemption. The years of maturity of the Certificates called for redemption shall be selected by the City. If two or more serial certificates of consecutive maturity are combined into one or more "term" Certificates (the "Term Certificates") by the Purchaser, such Term Certificates will be subject to mandatory sinking fund redemption in accordance with the provisions of the Ordinance.

Selection of Certificates for Redemption

If less than all of the Certificates are redeemed within a stated maturity at any time, the Certificates to be redeemed shall be selected by the Paying Agent/Registrar at random and by lot or other customary method in multiples of \$5,000 within any stated maturity.

Notice of Redemption

Not less than 30 days prior to a redemption date for the Certificates, the City shall cause a notice of redemption to be sent by United States mail, first class, postage prepaid, to each registered owner of a Certificate to be redeemed, in whole or in part, at the address of the registered owner appearing on the registration books relating to the Certificates kept by the Paying Agent/Registrar (the "Security Register") at the close of business on the business day next preceding the date of mailing such notice. ANY NOTICE OF REDEMPTION SO MAILED SHALL BE CONCLUSIVELY PRESUMED TO HAVE BEEN DULY GIVEN IRRESPECTIVE OF WHETHER ONE OR MORE CERTIFICATEHOLDERS FAILED TO RECEIVE SUCH NOTICE.

All notices of redemption shall (i) specify the date of redemption for the Certificates, (ii) identify the Certificates to be redeemed and, in the case of a portion of the principal amount to be redeemed, the principal amount thereof to be redeemed, (iii) state the redemption price, (iv) state the Certificates, or the portion of the principal amount thereof to be redeemed, shall become due and payable on the redemption date specified, and the interest thereon, or on the portion of the principal amount thereof to be redeemed, shall cease to accrue from and after the redemption date, and (v) specify that payment of the redemption price for the Certificates, or the principal amount thereof to be redeemed, shall be made at the designated corporate trust office of the Paying Agent/Registrar only upon presentation and surrender thereof by the registered owner. If a Certificate is subject by its terms to redemption and has been called for redemption and notice of redemption thereof has been duly given or waived as provided in the Ordinance, such Certificate (or the principal amount thereof to be redeemed) so called for redemption shall become due and payable, and on the redemption date

designated in such notice, interest on said Certificate (or the principal amount thereof to be redeemed) called for redemption shall cease to accrue and such Certificate shall not be deemed to be Outstanding.

The Paying Agent/Registrar and the City, so long as a Book-Entry-Only System is used for the Certificates, will mail any notice of redemption, notice of proposed amendment to the Ordinance or other notices with respect to the Certificates only to DTC. Any failure by DTC to advise any DTC participant, or of any DTC participant or indirect participant to notify the Beneficial Owner, shall not affect the validity of the redemption of the Certificates called for redemption or any other action premised on any such notice. Redemption of portions of the Certificates held by the City will reduce the outstanding principal amount of such Certificates held by DTC. In such event, DTC may implement, through its Book-Entry-Only System, a redemption of such Certificates held for the account of DTC participants in accordance with its rules or other agreements with DTC participants and then DTC participants and indirect participants may implement a redemption of such Certificates from the Beneficial Owners. Any such selection of Certificates to be redeemed will not be governed by the Ordinance and will not be conducted by the City or the Paying Agent/Registrar. Neither the City nor the Paying Agent/Registrar will have any responsibility to DTC participants, indirect participants or the persons for whom DTC participants act as nominees, with respect to the payments on the Certificates or the providing of notice to DTC participants, indirect participants, or Beneficial Owners of the selection of portions of the Certificates for redemption. See "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" herein.

Legality

The Certificates are subject to the approval of legality by the Attorney General of the State of Texas and the approval of certain legal matters by Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP, Bond Counsel, San Antonio, Texas. The legal opinion of Bond Counsel will accompany the Certificates deposited with DTC or will be printed on the Certificates. A form of the legal opinion of Bond Counsel appears in APPENDIX D attached hereto.

Delivery

When issued; anticipated on or about April 12, 2018.

Payment Record

The City has never defaulted with respect to the payment of the principal and interest requirements on any of its bonded indebtedness.

Additional Bond Issues

The City does not anticipate issuing additional general obligation debt in the next twelve months, except potentially refunding bonds for debt service savings. On February 15, 2018 the City closed on a \$649,000 issuance of Tax Notes which were privately placed. The City is also considering the issuance of utility system revenue bonds during 2018.

Defeasance

Any Certificate will be deemed paid and shall no longer be considered to be outstanding within the meaning of the Ordinance when payment of the principal of and interest on such Certificate to its stated maturity or redemption date will have been made or will have been provided by depositing with the Paying Agent/Registrar, or an authorized escrow agent, (1) cash in an amount sufficient to make such payment, (2) Government Obligations (defined below) certified by an independent public firm of national reputation or another qualified financial institution (including the City's financial advisor) to be of such maturities and interest payment dates and bear such interest as will, without further investment or reinvestment of either the principal amount thereof or the interest earnings therefrom, be sufficient to make such payment, or (3) a combination of money and Government Obligations together so certified sufficient to make such payment; provided, however, that no certification by an independent accounting firm of the sufficiency of deposits shall be required in connection with a gross defeasance of Certificates.

The Ordinance provides that "Government Obligations" means (a) direct, noncallable obligations of the United States of America, including obligations that are unconditionally guaranteed by the United States of America, (b) noncallable obligations of an agency or instrumentality of the United States of America, including obligations that are unconditionally guaranteed or insured by the agency or instrumentality and that, on the date the governing body of the City authorizes the defeasance, are rated as to investment quality by a nationally recognized investment rating firm not less than "AAA" or its equivalent, (c) noncallable obligations of a state or an agency or a county, municipality, or other political subdivision of a state that on the date the governing body of the City adopts or approves the proceedings authorizing the financial arrangements have been refunded and are rated as to investment quality by a nationally recognized investment rating firm not less than "AAA" or its equivalent, and (d) any additional securities and obligations hereafter authorized by Texas law as eligible for use to accomplish the discharge of obligations such as the Certificates. City officials may restrict such eligible securities as deemed appropriate. There is no assurance that the ratings for U.S. Treasury securities acquired to defease any Certificates, or those for any other Government Obligations, will be maintained at any particular rating category. Further, there is no assurance that current Texas law will not be amended in a manner that expands or contracts the list of

permissible defeasance securities (such list consisting of those securities identified in clauses (a) through (c) above), or any rating requirement thereon, that may be purchased with defeasance proceeds relating to the Certificates (“Defeasance Proceeds”), though the City has reserved the right to utilize any additional securities for such purpose in the event the aforementioned list is expanded. Because the Ordinance does not contractually limit such permissible defeasance securities and expressly recognizes the ability of the City to use lawfully available Defeasance Proceeds to defease all or any portion of the Certificates, registered owners of Certificates are deemed to have consented to the use of Defeasance Proceeds to purchase such other defeasance securities, notwithstanding the fact that such defeasance securities may not be of the same investment quality as those currently identified under Texas law as permissible defeasance securities.

Upon such deposit as described above, such Certificates shall no longer be regarded to be outstanding or unpaid for purposes of applying any debt limitation on indebtedness or for purposes of taxation. After firm banking and financial arrangements for the discharge and final payment or redemption of the Certificates have been made as described above, all rights of the City to initiate proceedings to call the Certificates for redemption or take any other action amending the terms of the Certificates are extinguished; provided, however, that the right to call the Certificates for redemption is not extinguished if the City: (i) in the proceedings providing for the firm banking and financial arrangements, expressly reserves the right to call the Certificates for redemption; (ii) gives notice of the reservation of that right to the owners of the Certificates immediately following the making of the firm banking and financial arrangements; and (iii) directs that notice of the reservation be included in any redemption notices that it authorizes.

Amendments

The City may amend the Ordinance without the consent of or notice to any registered owners in any manner not detrimental to the interests of the registered owners, including the curing of any ambiguity, inconsistency, or formal defect or omission therein. In addition, the City may, with the written consent of the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Certificates then outstanding, amend, add to, or rescind any of the provisions of the Ordinance; except that, without the consent of all of the registered owners of the Certificates then outstanding, no such amendment, addition, or rescission may (1) change the date specified as the date on which the principal of, or any installment of interest on any Certificate is due and payable, reduce the principal amount thereof, or the rate of interest thereon, the redemption price therefor, or in any other way modify the terms of payment of the principal of, or interest on the Certificates, (2) give any preference to any Certificate over any other Certificate, or (3) reduce the percentage of the aggregate principal amount of Certificates required to be held for consent to any amendment, addition, or waiver.

Defaults and Remedies

If the City defaults in the payment of principal or interest, or redemption price, on the Certificates when due, or if it fails to make payments into any fund or funds created in the Ordinance, or defaults in the observation or performance of any other covenants, conditions, or obligations set forth in the Ordinance, the registered owners may seek a writ of mandamus to compel City officials to carry out their legally imposed duties with respect to the Certificates, if there is no other available remedy at law to compel performance of the Certificates or the Ordinance and the City's obligations are not uncertain or disputed. The issuance of a writ of mandamus is controlled by equitable principles, so rests with the discretion of the court, but may not be arbitrarily refused. There is no acceleration of maturity of the Certificates in the event of default and, consequently, the remedy of mandamus may have to be relied upon from year to year. The Ordinance does not provide for the appointment of a trustee to represent the interest of the bondholders upon any failure of the City to perform in accordance with the terms of the Ordinance, or upon any other condition and accordingly all legal actions to enforce such remedies would have to be undertaken at the initiative of, and be financed by, the registered owners. Texas cities are generally immune from suits for money damages for breach of contracts under the doctrine of sovereign immunity. The Texas Supreme Court ruled in *Tooke v. City of Mexia*, 197 S.W.3d 325 (Tex. 2006) that a waiver of sovereign immunity in a contractual dispute must be provided for by statute in “clear and unambiguous” language. Furthermore, *Tooke*, and subsequent jurisprudence, held that a municipality is not immune from suit for torts committed in the performance of its proprietary functions, as it is for torts committed in the performance of its governmental functions (the “Proprietary-Governmental Dichotomy”). Governmental functions are those that are enjoined on a municipality by law and are given by the State as a part of the State's sovereignty, to be exercised by the municipality in the interest of the general public, while proprietary functions are those that a municipality may, in its discretion, perform in the interest of the inhabitants of municipality.

In *Wasson Interests, Ltd., v. City of Jacksonville*, No. 14-0645 at 18, (Tex. April 1, 2016), available at <http://docs.texasappellate.com/scotx/op/14-0645/2016-04-01.brown.pdf> (“Wasson”) the Texas Supreme Court (the “Court”) addressed whether the distinction between governmental and proprietary acts (as found in tort-based causes of action) applies to breach of contract claims against municipalities. The Court analyzed the rationale behind the Proprietary-Governmental Dichotomy to determine that “a city's proprietary functions are not done pursuant to the ‘will of the people’” and protecting such municipalities “via the [S]tate's immunity is not an efficient way to ensure efficient allocation of [S]tate resources”. While the Court recognized that the distinction between government and proprietary functions is not clear, the *Wasson* opinion held that Proprietary-Governmental Dichotomy applies in contract-claims context. Therefore, in regard to municipal contract cases (as in tort claims), it is incumbent on the courts to determine whether a function is proprietary or governmental based upon the statutory guidance and definitions found in the Texas Civil Practice and Remedies Code.

Notwithstanding the foregoing new case law issued by the Court, such sovereign immunity issues have not been adjudicated in relation to bond matters (specifically, in regard to the issuance of municipal debt). Each situation will be prospectively evaluated based on the facts and circumstances surrounding the contract in question to determine if a suit, and subsequently, a judgment, is justiciable against a municipality.

If a judgment against the City could be obtained, it could not be enforced by direct levy and execution against the City's property. Further, the registered owners cannot themselves foreclose on property within the City or sell property within the City to enforce the tax lien on taxable property to pay the principal of and interest on the Certificates. Furthermore, the City is eligible to seek relief from its creditors under Chapter 9 of the U.S. Bankruptcy Code ("Chapter 9"). Although Chapter 9 provides for the recognition of a security interest represented by a specifically pledged source of revenues, the pledge of ad valorem taxes in support of a general obligation of a bankrupt entity is not specifically recognized as a security interest under Chapter 9. Chapter 9 also includes an automatic stay provision that would prohibit, without Bankruptcy Court approval, the prosecution of any other legal action by creditors or bondholders of an entity which has sought protection under Chapter 9. Therefore, should the City avail itself of Chapter 9 protection from creditors, the ability to enforce would be subject to the approval of the Bankruptcy Court (which could require that the action be heard in Bankruptcy Court instead of other federal or state court); and the Bankruptcy Code provides for broad discretionary powers of a Bankruptcy Court in administering any proceeding brought before it. The opinion of Bond Counsel will note that all opinions relative to the enforceability of the Ordinance and the Certificates are qualified with respect to the customary rights of debtors relative to their creditors and by general principles of equity which permit the exercise of judicial discretion.

REGISTRATION, TRANSFER, AND EXCHANGE

Paying Agent/Registrar

The initial Paying Agent/Registrar is ZB, National Association, dba Amegy Bank, Houston, Texas. The Certificates will be issued in fully registered form in multiples of \$5,000 for any one stated maturity, and principal and semiannual interest will be paid by the Paying Agent/Registrar. If the Certificates are not held in the Book-Entry-Only System, interest on the Certificates will be paid by check or draft mailed on each interest payment date by the Paying Agent/Registrar to the registered owner at the last known address as it appears on the Paying Agent/Registrar's books on the Record Date (see "REGISTRATION, TRANSFER AND EXCHANGE - Record Date" herein) or by such other method, acceptable to the Paying Agent/Registrar, requested by and at the risk and expense of the registered owner, and principal of the Certificates will be paid to the registered owner at stated maturity or earlier redemption upon presentation to the Paying Agent/Registrar.

Successor Paying Agent/Registrar

The City covenants that until the Certificates are paid it will at all times maintain and provide a Paying Agent/Registrar. In the Ordinance, the City retains the right to replace the Paying Agent/Registrar. If the Paying Agent/Registrar is replaced by the City, the new Paying Agent/Registrar shall accept the previous Paying Agent/Registrar's records and act in the same capacity as the previous Paying Agent/Registrar. Any successor Paying Agent/Registrar selected by the City shall be a bank, trust company, financial institution or other entity duly qualified and legally authorized to serve and perform the duties of Paying Agent/Registrar for the Certificates. Upon any change in the Paying Agent/Registrar for the Certificates, the City will promptly cause a notice thereof to be sent to each registered owner of the Certificates by United States mail, first class, postage prepaid, which notice shall give the address of the new Paying Agent/Registrar.

Record Date

The record date ("Record Date") for determining the person entitled to the payment of interest on a Certificate is the fifteenth day of the month next preceding each interest payment date.

If the date for the payment of the principal of or interest on the Certificates is a Saturday, a Sunday, a legal holiday or a day on which banking institutions in the city where the corporate trust office of the Paying Agent/Registrar is located are authorized by law or executive order to close, then the date for such payment is the next succeeding day which is not such a day and payment on such date will have the same force and effect as if made on the original date payment was due.

Special Record Date for Interest Payment

In the event of a non-payment of interest on a scheduled payment date, and for 30 days thereafter, a new record date for such interest payment (a "Special Record Date") will be established by the Paying Agent/Registrar, if and when funds for the payment of such interest have been received. Notice of the Special Record Date and of the scheduled payment date of the past due interest (which shall be 15 days after the Special Record Date) shall be sent at least five (5) business days prior to the Special Record Date by United States mail, first class, postage prepaid, to the address of each registered owner of a Certificate appearing on the books of the Paying Agent/Registrar at the close of business on the last business day next preceding the date of mailing of such notice.

Registration, Transferability and Exchange

In the event the Book-Entry-Only System shall be discontinued, printed certificates will be issued to the registered owners of the Certificates and thereafter the Certificates may be transferred, registered, and assigned on the registration books of the Paying Agent/Registrar only upon presentation and surrender thereof to the Paying Agent/Registrar, and such registration and transfer shall be without expense or service charge to the registered owner, except for any tax or other governmental charges required to be paid with respect to such registration and transfer. A Certificate may be assigned by the execution of an assignment form on the Certificate or by other instrument of transfer and assignment acceptable to the Paying Agent/Registrar. A new Certificate or Certificates will be delivered by the Paying Agent/Registrar in lieu of the Certificates being transferred or exchanged at the designated office of the Paying Agent/Registrar, or sent by United States registered mail to the new registered owner at the registered owner's request, risk and expense. New Certificates issued in an exchange or transfer of Certificates will be delivered to the registered owner or assignee of the registered owner in not more than three (3) business days after the receipt of the Certificates to be canceled in the exchange or transfer and the written instrument of transfer or request for exchange duly executed by the registered owner or his duly authorized agent, in form satisfactory to the Paying Agent/Registrar. New Certificates registered and delivered in an exchange or transfer shall be in denominations of \$5,000 for any one stated maturity or any integral multiple thereof and for a like aggregate principal amount and at the same maturity or maturities as the Certificate or Certificates surrendered for exchange or transfer. See "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" herein.

Limitation on Transferability of Certificates Called for Redemption

Neither the City nor the Paying Agent/Registrar are required (1) to make any transfer or exchange during a period beginning at the opening of business 45 days before the day of the first mailing of a notice of redemption of Certificates and ending at the close of business on the day of such mailing, or (2) to transfer or exchange any Certificates so selected for redemption when such redemption is scheduled to occur within 45 calendar days; provided however, that such limitation of transfer is not applicable to an exchange by the registered owner of the uncalled balance of a Certificate.

Replacement Certificates

If any Certificate is mutilated, destroyed, stolen or lost, a new Certificate of like kind and in the same amount as the Certificate so mutilated, destroyed, stolen or lost will be issued. In the case of a mutilated Certificate, such new Certificate will be delivered only upon surrender and cancellation of such mutilated Certificate. In the case of any Certificate issued in lieu of and in substitution for a Certificate which has been destroyed, stolen, or lost, such new Certificate will be delivered only (a) upon filing with the City and the Paying Agent/Registrar evidence satisfactory to establish to the City and the Paying Agent/Registrar that such Certificate has been destroyed, stolen or lost and proof of the ownership thereof, and (b) upon furnishing the City and the Paying Agent/Registrar with Certificate or indemnity satisfactory to them. The person requesting the authentication and delivery of a new Certificate must comply with such other reasonable regulations as the Paying Agent/Registrar may prescribe and pay such expenses as the Paying Agent/Registrar may incur in connection therewith.

BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM

The following describes how ownership of the Certificates is to be transferred and how the principal of and interest on the Certificates are to be paid to and credited by The Depository Trust Company ("DTC"), New York, New York, while the Certificates are registered in its nominee name. The information in this section concerning DTC and the Book-Entry-Only System has been provided by DTC for use in disclosure documents such as this Official Statement. The City, the Purchaser, and the Financial Advisor believe the source of such information to be reliable, but take no responsibility for the accuracy or completeness thereof.

The City cannot and does not give any assurance that (1) DTC will distribute payments of debt service on the Certificates, or redemption or other notices, to DTC Participants, (2) DTC Participants or others will distribute debt service payments paid to DTC or its nominee (as the registered owner of the Certificates), or redemption or other notices, to the Beneficial Owners, or that they will do so on a timely basis, or (3) DTC will serve and act in the manner described in this Official Statement. The current rules applicable to DTC are on file with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission, and the current procedures of DTC to be followed in dealing with DTC Participants are on file with DTC.

DTC will act as securities depository for the Certificates. The Certificates will be issued as fully registered securities registered in the name of Cede & Co. (DTC's partnership nominee) or such other name as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC. One fully-registered security certificate will be issued for each maturity of the Certificates, each in the aggregate principal amount of such maturity, and will be deposited with DTC.

DTC, the world's largest depository, is a limited-purpose trust company organized under the New York Banking Law, a "banking organization" within the meaning of the New York Banking Law, a member of the Federal Reserve System, a "clearing corporation" within the meaning of the New York Uniform Commercial Code, and a "clearing agency" registered pursuant to the provisions of Section 17A of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. DTC holds and provides asset servicing for over 3.5 million issues of U.S. and non-U.S. equity issues, corporate and municipal debt issues, and money market

instruments from over 100 countries that DTC's participants ("Direct Participants") deposit with DTC. DTC also facilitates the post-trade settlement among Direct Participants of sales and other securities transactions in deposited securities, through electronic computerized book-entry transfers and pledges between Direct Participants' accounts. This eliminates the need for physical movement of securities certificates. Direct Participants include both U.S. and non-U.S. securities brokers and dealers, banks, trust companies, clearing corporations, and certain other organizations. DTC is a wholly-owned subsidiary of The Depository Trust & Clearing Corporation ("DTCC"). DTCC is the holding company for DTC, National Securities Clearing Corporation, and Fixed Income Clearing Corporation, all of which are registered clearing agencies. DTCC is owned by the users of its regulated subsidiaries. Access to the DTC system is also available to others such as both U.S. and non-U.S. securities brokers and dealers, banks, trust companies, and clearing corporations that clear through or maintain a custodial relationship with a Direct Participant, either directly or indirectly ("Indirect Participants"). DTC has a S&P Global Ratings rating of "AA+". The DTC Rules applicable to its Participants are on file with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission (the "SEC"). More information about DTC can be found at www.dtcc.com.

Purchases of Certificates under the DTC system must be made by or through Direct Participants, which will receive a credit for the Certificates on DTC's records. The ownership interest of each actual purchaser of each Certificate ("Beneficial Owner") is in turn to be recorded on the Direct and Indirect Participants' records. Beneficial Owners will not receive written confirmation from DTC of their purchase. Beneficial Owners are, however, expected to receive written confirmations providing details of the transaction, as well as periodic statements of their holdings, from the Direct or Indirect Participant through which the Beneficial Owner entered into the transaction. Transfers of ownership interests in the Certificates are to be accomplished by entries made on the books of Direct and Indirect Participants acting on behalf of Beneficial Owners. Beneficial Owners will not receive certificates representing their ownership interests in Certificates, except in the event that use of the Book-Entry-Only system for the Certificates is discontinued.

To facilitate subsequent transfers, all Certificates deposited by Direct Participants with DTC are registered in the name of DTC's partnership nominee, Cede & Co., or such other name as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC. The deposit of Certificates with DTC and their registration in the name of Cede & Co. or such other DTC nominee do not effect any change in beneficial ownership. DTC has no knowledge of the actual Beneficial Owners of the Certificates; DTC's records reflect only the identity of the Direct Participants to whose accounts such Certificates are credited, which may or may not be the Beneficial Owners. The Direct and Indirect Participants will remain responsible for keeping account of their holdings on behalf of their customers.

Conveyance of notices and other communications by DTC to Direct Participants, by Direct Participants to Indirect Participants, and by Direct Participants and Indirect Participants to Beneficial Owners will be governed by arrangements among them, subject to any statutory or regulatory requirements as may be in effect from time to time. Beneficial Owners of Certificates may wish to take certain steps to augment the transmission to them of notices of significant events with respect to the Certificates, such as redemptions, tenders, defaults, and proposed amendments to the Certificate documents. For example, Beneficial Owners of Certificates may wish to ascertain that the nominee holding the Certificates for their benefit has agreed to obtain and transmit notices to Beneficial Owners. In the alternative, Beneficial

Owners may wish to provide their names and addresses to the registrar and request that copies of notices be provided directly to them.

Redemption notices shall be sent to DTC. If less than all of the Certificates within an issue are being redeemed, DTC's practice is to determine by lot the amount of the interest of each Direct Participant in such issue to be redeemed.

Neither DTC nor Cede & Co. (nor any other DTC nominee) will consent or vote with respect to Certificates unless authorized by a Direct Participant in accordance with DTC's Procedures. Under its usual procedures, DTC mails an Omnibus Proxy to the City as soon as possible after the record date. The Omnibus Proxy assigns Cede & Co.'s consenting or voting rights to those Direct Participants to whose accounts Certificates are credited on the record date (identified in a listing attached to the Omnibus Proxy).

Redemption proceeds and principal and interest payments on the Certificates will be made to Cede & Co., or such other nominee as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC. DTC's practice is to credit Direct Participants' accounts upon DTC's receipt of funds and corresponding detail information from the City or the Paying Agent/Registrar, on payable date in accordance with their respective holdings shown on DTC's records. Payments by Participants to Beneficial Owners will be governed by standing instructions and customary practices, as is the case with securities held for the accounts of customers in bearer form or registered in "street name," and will be the responsibility of such Participant and not of DTC [nor its nominee], the Paying Agent/Registrar, or the City, subject to any statutory or regulatory requirements as may be in effect from time to time. Payment of redemption price and principal and interest payments to Cede & Co. (or such other nominee as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC) is the responsibility of the City or the Paying Agent/Registrar, disbursement of such payments to Direct Participants will be the responsibility of DTC (or its nominee), and disbursement of such payments to the Beneficial Owners will be the responsibility of Direct and Indirect Participants.

DTC may discontinue providing its services as depository with respect to the Certificates at any time by giving reasonable notice to the City or the Paying Agent/Registrar. Under such circumstances, in the event that a successor depository is not obtained, security certificates are required to be printed and delivered.

The City may decide to discontinue use of the system of book-entry transfers through DTC (or a successor securities depository). In that event, security certificates will be printed and delivered.

The information in this section concerning DTC and DTC's Book-Entry System has been obtained from sources that the City believes to be reliable, but none of the City, the Purchaser, or the Financial Advisors take responsibility for the accuracy thereof.

Use of Certain Terms in Other Sections of This Official Statement

In reading this Official Statement it should be understood that while the Certificates are in the Book-Entry-Only System, references in other sections of this Official Statement to registered owners should be read to include the person for which the Participant acquires an interest in the Certificates, but (i) all rights of ownership must be exercised through DTC and the Book-Entry-Only System, and (ii) except as described above, notices that are to be given to registered owners under the Ordinance will be given only to DTC.

Effect of Termination of Book-Entry-Only System

In the event that the Book-Entry-Only System is discontinued by DTC or the use of the Book-Entry-Only System is discontinued by the City, printed certificates will be issued to the respective holders and the Certificates will be subject to transfer, exchange and registration provisions as set forth in the Ordinance and summarized under the caption "REGISTRATION, TRANSFER AND EXCHANGE" above.

SOURCES AND USES OF FUNDS

The proceeds from the sale of the Certificates will be applied approximately as follows:

<u>Sources</u>	
Par Amount of Certificates	\$ _____
[Net] Reoffering Premium on the Certificates	
Accrued Interest	
Total Sources	\$ _____
 <u>Uses</u>	
Deposit to Construction Fund	\$ _____
Deposit to Certificate Fund (includes accrued interest)	
Purchaser's Discount	
Cost of Issuance	
Total Uses	\$ _____

INVESTMENT POLICIES

Investments

The City invests its funds in investments authorized by Texas law in accordance with investment policies approved by the City Council of the City. Both state law and the City's investment policies are subject to change.

Legal Investments

Under State law, the City is authorized to invest in (1) obligations, including letters of credit, of the United States or its agencies and instrumentalities, (2) direct obligations of the State or its agencies and instrumentalities, (3) collateralized mortgage obligations directly issued by a federal agency or instrumentality of the United States, the underlying security for which is guaranteed by an agency or instrumentality of the United States, (4) other obligations, the principal of and interest on which are unconditionally guaranteed or insured by, or backed by the full faith and credit of the State or the United States or their respective agencies and instrumentalities, (5) obligations of states, agencies, counties, cities, and other political subdivisions of any state rated as to investment quality by a nationally recognized investment rating firm not less than A or its equivalent, (6) certificates of deposit and share certificates (i) that are issued by or through an institution that has its main office or a branch office in Texas and are guaranteed or insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation or the National Credit Union Share Insurance Fund, or are secured as to principal by obligations described in clauses (1) through (5) and clause (14) or in any other manner and amount provided by law for City deposits; or (ii) where: (a) the funds are invested by the City through a depository institution that has a main office or branch office in the State and that is selected by the City; (b) the depository institution selected by the City arranges for the deposit of funds in one or more

federally insured depository institutions, wherever located, for the account of the City; (c) the full amount of the principal and accrued interest of each of the certificates of deposit is insured by the United States or an instrumentality of the United States; (d) the depository institution acts as a custodian for the City with respect to the certificates of deposit; and (e) at the same time that the certificates of deposit are issued, the depository institution selected by the City receives deposits from customers of other federally insured depository institutions, wherever located, that is equal to or greater than the funds invested by the City through the depository institution selected under clause (ii)(a) above (7) fully collateralized repurchase agreements that have a defined termination date, are fully secured by obligations described in clause (1) and require the security being purchased by the City to be pledged to the City, held in the City's name and deposited at the time the investment is made with the City or with a third party selected and approved by the City, and are placed through a primary government securities dealer or a financial institution doing business in the State, (8) bankers' acceptances with the remaining term of 270 days or less from the date of issuance, if the short-term obligations of the accepting bank or its parent are rated at least A-1 or P-1 or the equivalent by at least one nationally recognized credit rating agency, (9) commercial paper with the remaining term of 270 days or less from the date of issuance that is rated at least A-1 or P-1 or the equivalent by at least (a) two nationally recognized credit rating agencies or (b) one nationally recognized credit rating agency if the paper is fully secured by an irrevocable letter of credit issued by a U.S. or state bank, (10) no-load money market mutual funds registered with and regulated by the United States Securities and Exchange Commission that comply with Federal Securities and Exchange Commission Rule 2a-7, (11) no-load mutual funds registered with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission that: have an average weighted maturity of less than two years and have a duration of one year or more and are invested exclusively in obligations described in this paragraph or have a duration of less than one year and the investment portfolio is limited to investment grade securities, excluding asset-backed securities, (13) interest-bearing banking deposits that are guaranteed or insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation or its successor or the National Credit Union Share Insurance Fund or its successors, and (14) obligations issued, assumed or guaranteed by the State of Israel. Texas law also permits the City to invest bond proceeds in a guaranteed investment contract subject to the limitations set forth in Chapter 2256, as amended, Texas Government Code.

Entities such as the City may enter into securities lending programs if (i) the securities loaned under the program are 100% collateralized including accrued income, a loan made under the program allows for termination at any time and a loan made under the program is either secured by (a) obligations that are described in clauses (1) through (5) and clauses (13) and (14) above, (b) pledged irrevocable letters of credit issued by a state or national bank that is continuously rated by a nationally recognized investment rating firm at not less than "A" or its equivalent or (c) cash invested in obligations described in clauses (1) through (5) and clauses (13) and (14) above, clause (9) above and clauses (10) and (11) above, or an authorized investment pool; (ii) securities held as collateral under a loan are pledged to such investing entity or a third party designated by such investing entity; (iii) a loan made under the program is placed through either a primary government securities dealer or a financial institution doing business in the State of Texas; and (iv) the agreement to lend securities has a term of one year or less.

The City may invest in such obligations directly or through government investment pools that invest solely in such obligations provided that the pool are rated no lower than "AAA" or "AAAm" or an equivalent by at least one nationally recognized rating service. The City is specifically prohibited from investing in: (1) obligations whose payment represents the coupon payments on the outstanding principal balance of the underlying mortgage-backed security collateral and pays no principal; (2) obligations whose payment represents the principal stream of cash flow from the underlying mortgage-backed security and bears no interest; (3) collateralized mortgage obligations that have a stated final maturity of greater than 10 years; and (4) collateralized mortgage obligations the interest rate of which is determined by an index that adjusts opposite to the changes in a market index.

Under Texas law, the City may contract with an investment management firm registered under the Investment Advisers Act of 1940 (15 U.S.C. Section 80b-1 et seq.) or with the State Securities Board to provide for the investment and management of its public funds or other funds under its control for a term up to two years, but the City retains ultimate responsibility as fiduciary of its assets. In order to renew or extend such a contract, the City must do so by order, ordinance or resolution. The City has not contracted with, and has no present intention of contracting with, any such investment management firm or the State Securities Board to provide such services.

Investment Policies

Under Texas law, the City is required to invest its funds under written investment policies that primarily emphasize safety of principal and liquidity; that address investment diversification, yield, maturity, and the quality and capability of investment management; and that includes a list of authorized investments for City funds, maximum allowable stated maturity of any individual investment owned by the City and the maximum average dollar-weighted maturity allowed for pooled fund groups. All City funds must be invested consistent with a formally adopted "Investment Strategy Statement" that specifically addresses each fund's investment. Each Investment Strategy Statement will describe its objectives concerning: (1) suitability of investment type, (2) preservation and safety of principal, (3) liquidity, (4) marketability of each investment, (5) diversification of the portfolio, and (6) yield.

Under Texas law, City investments must be made "with judgment and care, under prevailing circumstances, that a person of prudence, discretion, and intelligence would exercise in the management of the person's own affairs, not for speculation, but for investment, considering the probable safety of capital and the probable income to be derived". At least quarterly the investment officers of the City shall submit an investment report detailing: (1) the investment position of the City, (2)

that all investment officers jointly prepared and signed the report, (3) the beginning market value, any additions and changes to market value and the ending value of each pooled fund group, (4) the book value and market value of each separately listed asset at the beginning and end of the reporting period, (5) the maturity date of each separately invested asset, (6) the account or fund or pooled fund group for which each individual investment was acquired, and (7) the compliance of the investment portfolio as it relates to: (a) adopted investment strategy statements and (b) state law. No person may invest City funds without express written authority from the City Council.

Additional Provisions

Under Texas law, the City is additionally required to: (1) annually review its adopted policies and strategies, (2) adopt a rule, order, ordinance or resolution stating that it has reviewed its investment policy and investment strategies and records any changes made to either its investment policy or investment strategy in the respective rule, order, ordinance or resolution, (3) require any investment officers with personal business relationships or relatives with firms seeking to sell securities to the entity to disclose the relationship and file a statement with the Texas Ethics Commission and the City Council; (4) require the qualified representative of firms offering to engage in an investment transaction with the City to: (a) receive and review the City’s investment policy, (b) acknowledge that reasonable controls and procedures have been implemented to preclude investment transactions conducted between the City and the business organization that are not authorized by the City’s investment policy (except to the extent that this authorization is dependent on an analysis of the makeup of the City’s entire portfolio or requires an interpretation of subjective investment standards), and (c) deliver a written statement in a form acceptable to the City and the business organization attesting to these requirements; (5) perform an annual audit of the management controls on investments and adherence to the City’s investment policy; (6) provide specific investment training for the Treasurer, Chief Financial Officer and investment officers; (7) restrict reverse repurchase agreements to not more than 90 days and restrict the investment of reverse repurchase agreement funds to no greater than the term of the reverse purchase agreement; (8) restrict the investment in no-load mutual funds in the aggregate to no more than 15% of the City’s monthly average fund balance, excluding bond proceeds and reserves and other funds held for debt service; (9) require local government investment pools to conform to the new disclosure, rating, net asset value, yield calculation, and advisory board requirements, and (10) at least annually review, revise, and adopt a list of qualified brokers that are authorized to engage in investment transactions with the City.

Current Investments*

As of January 1, 2018, the following percentages of the City’s investable funds were invested as indicated below:

<u>Category of Investments</u>	<u>Amount</u>	<u>Percentage</u>	<u>Term of Investments</u>
Depository Bank - Cash	\$ 4,268,282	5.17%	Daily liquidity
Money Market Fund	254,812	.31%	Daily liquidity
Investment Pools	64,133,905	77.74%	Daily liquidity
Certificates of Deposit	6,717,000	8.14%	1-2 years
US Treasuries/Agencies	<u>7,125,888</u>	<u>8.64%</u>	14 months
Total	\$82,499,887	100.00%	

As of such date, the “fair” value of such investments (as determined by the City by reference to published quotations, dealer bids, and comparable information) was approximately 100% their book “balance”. No funds of the City are invested in derivative securities, *i.e.*, securities whose rate of return is determined by reference to some other instrument, index, or commodity.

* *Unaudited.*

PENSION FUND AND OTHER POST-EMPLOYMENT BENEFITS

In June 1999, the Governmental Accounting Standards Board issued Statement No. 34, “Basic Financial Statements - Management’s Discussion and Analysis - for State and Local Governments.” The objective of this Statement is to enhance the clarity and usefulness of the general-purpose external financial reports of state and local governments to the citizenry, legislative and oversight bodies, and investors and creditors. The City implemented GASB 34 for its fiscal year ending September 30, 2003. While adoption of this Statement altered the presentation of some financial information, there was no material adverse impact to the City’s financial position, results of operation, or cash flows. In June 2012, Government Accounting Standards Board (GASB) Statement No. 68 (Accounting and Financial Reporting for Pensions) was issued to improve accounting and financial reporting by state and local governments regarding pensions. GASB Statement No. 68 requires reporting entities, such as the City, to recognize their proportionate share of the net pension liability and operating statement activity related to changes in collective pension liability. This means that reporting entities, such as the City, that contribute to the Texas Municipal Retirement System pension plan will report a liability on the face of their government-wide financial statements. Such reporting began with the City’s fiscal year ended September 30, 2016. GASB Statement No. 68 applies only to pension benefits and does not apply to Other Post-Employment Benefits. See Note J - Employees’

Retirement Systems in the Notes to Basic Financial Statements September 30, 2017 included in "APPENDIX C - Excerpts from the City of Seguin, Texas Audited Financial Statements for the year ended September 30, 2017."

The City provides certain other post-retirement benefits to retired employees and their dependents that fall within the scope of Governmental Accounting Standards Board's Statement of General Accounting Standards No. 45 ("GASB 45"), Accounting by Employers for Other Post-employment Benefits ("OPEB").

GASB 45, which sets forth standards for the measurement, recognition, and display of post-employment benefits other than pensions (such as health and life insurance for current and future retirees), applies to the City and requires implementation by the City for the fiscal year that began October 1, 2009. GASB 45 requires the City to: (i) measure the cost of benefits, and recognize other post-employment benefits expense, on the accrual basis of accounting over the working lifetime of the employees; (ii) provide information about the actuarial liabilities for promised benefits associated with past services and whether, or to what extent, the future costs of those benefits have been funded; and provide information useful in assessing potential demands on the employer's future cash flows. The employer's contributions to OPEB costs that are less than an actuarially determined annual required contribution will result in a net OPEB cost, which under GASB 45 must be recorded as a liability in the employer's financial statements.

During fiscal year 2009, the City implemented GASB 45. See Note K - Post Employment Benefits Other Than Pensions - Retiree Health Benefits in the Notes to Basic Financial Statements September 30, 2017 included in "APPENDIX C - Excerpts from the City of Seguin, Texas Audited Financial Statement for the year ended September 30, 2017."

AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES

Property Tax Code and County-Wide Appraisal District

The Texas Property Tax Code (the "Tax Code") provides for county wide appraisal and equalization of taxable property values and establishes in each county of the State of Texas an appraisal district and an appraisal review board responsible for appraising property for all taxable units within the county. The Guadalupe County Appraisal District (the "Appraisal District") is responsible for appraising property within the City generally as of January 1 of each year. The appraisal values set by the Appraisal District are subject to review and change by the Guadalupe County Appraisal Review Board (the "Appraisal Review Board") which is appointed by the Appraisal District. Such appraisal rolls, as approved by the Appraisal Review Board, are used by the City in establishing its tax roll and tax rate.

Property Subject to Taxation by the City

Except for certain exemptions provided by Texas law, all real and certain tangible personal property with a tax situs in the City are subject to taxation by the City. Principal categories of exempt property (including certain exemptions which are subject to local option by the City Council) include property owned by the State of Texas or its political subdivisions if the property is used for public purposes; property exempt from ad valorem taxation by federal law; certain improvements to real property and certain tangible personal property located in designated reinvestment zones on which the City has agreed to abate ad valorem taxes, certain household goods, family supplies and personal effects; farm products owned by the producers; certain property of a non-profit corporation used in scientific research and educational activities benefiting a college or university, and designated historical sites. Other principal categories of exempt property include tangible personal property not held or used for production of income, solar and wind-powered energy devices; most individually owned automobiles; certain varying amounts of valuation attributable to residential homesteads of persons ages 65 or over and property of disabled veterans or their surviving spouses or children; and certain classes of intangible property. Owners of agricultural and open space land, under certain circumstances, may request valuation of such land on the basis of productive capacity rather than market value.

Valuation of Property for Taxation

Generally, property in the City must be appraised by the Appraisal District at market value as of January 1 of each year. In determining the market value of property, different methods of appraisal may be used, including the cost method of appraisal, the income method of appraisal and market data comparison method of appraisal, and the method considered most appropriate by the chief appraiser is to be used. Oil and gas reserves are assessed on the basis of pricing information contained in the most recently published Early Release Overview of the Annual Energy Outlook published by the United States Energy Information Administration, as well as appraisal formulas developed by the State Comptroller of Public Accounts. Effective January 1, 2016, the valuation of assessment of oil and gas reserves will depend upon pricing information in either the standard edition of the Annual Energy Outlook or, if the most recently published edition of the Annual Energy Outlook was published before December 1 of the preceding calendar year, the Short-Term Energy Outlook report published in January of the current calendar year. Once an appraisal roll is prepared and finally approved by the Appraisal Review Board, it is used by the City in establishing its tax rolls and tax rate. Assessments under the Tax Code are to be based on one hundred percent (100%) of market value, except as described below, and no assessment ratio can be applied.

Article VIII of the Texas Constitution and the Tax Code permits land designated for agricultural use (Section 1-d), open space or timberland (Section 1-d-1) to be appraised at the lesser of its value based on the land's capacity to produce agricultural or timber products or its market value. Landowners wishing to avail themselves of the agricultural use designation must apply for the designation, and the appraiser is required by the Tax Code to act on each claimant's right to the designation individually. If a claimant receives the agricultural use designation and later loses it by changing the use of the property or selling it to an unqualified owner, the City can collect taxes based on the new value, including three (3) years for agricultural use and five (5) years for agricultural open space land and timberland prior to the loss of the designation. The same land may not be qualified under both Section 1-d and 1-d-1.

State law requires the appraised value of a residence homestead to be based solely on the property's value as a residence homestead, regardless of whether residential use is considered to be the highest and best use of the property. State law further limits the appraised value of a residence homestead for a tax year to be an amount not to exceed the lesser of (1) the market value of the property or (2) the sum of (a) 10% of the appraised value of the property for the last year in which the property was appraised for taxation times the number of years since the property was last appraised, plus (b) the appraised value of the property for the last year in which the property was appraised plus (c) the market value of all new improvements to the property.

The Tax Code requires the Appraisal District to implement a plan for periodic reappraisal of property to update appraisal values. The plan must provide for appraisal of all real property in the Appraisal District at least once every three (3) years. The City, at its expense, has the right to obtain from the Appraisal District a current estimate of appraised values within the City or an estimate of any new property or improvements within the City. While such current estimate of appraised values may serve to indicate the rate and extent of growth of taxable values within the City, it cannot be used for establishing a tax rate within the City until such time as the Appraisal District chooses to formally include such values on its appraisal roll.

Under Article VIII and State Law the governing bodies of counties, cities, towns or junior college districts are authorized to establish an ad valorem "tax freeze" on residence homesteads of the disabled and persons sixty-five years of age or older. This "tax freeze" can be implemented by official action of a governing body, or pursuant to an election called by the governing body upon receipt of a petition signed by 5% of registered voters of the political subdivision.

If the tax limitation is established, the total amount of ad valorem taxes imposed by the City on a homestead that receives the exemption may not be increased while it remains the residence homestead of that person or that person's spouse who is disabled or sixty-five years of age or older, except to the extent the value of the homestead is increased by improvements other than repairs. If a disabled or elderly person dies in a year in which the person received a residence homestead exemption, the total amount of ad valorem taxes imposed on the homestead by the taxing unit may not be increased while it remains the residence homestead of that person's surviving spouse if (i) the taxpayer died in a year in which he qualified for the exemption, (ii) the surviving spouse was at least 55 years of age when the taxpayer died, and (iii) the property was the residence homestead of the surviving spouse when the taxpayer died and the property remains the residence homestead of the surviving spouse.

In addition, the Texas Legislature by general law may provide for the transfer of all or a proportionate amount of the tax limitation applicable to a person's homestead to be transferred to the new homestead of such person if the person moves to a different residence within the taxing unit. Once established, the governing body of the taxing unit may not repeal or rescind the tax limitation. The City Council approved the imposition of the tax freeze in December 2003.

Residential Homestead Exemptions

Under Section 1-b, Article VIII of the Texas Constitution, and State law, the governing body of a political subdivision, at its option, may grant:

1. An exemption of not less than \$3,000 of the market value of the residence homestead of persons 65 years of age or older and the disabled from all ad valorem taxes thereafter levied by the political subdivision. The City has not elected to grant this additional exemption.
2. An exemption of up to 20% of the market value of residence homesteads; minimum exemption \$5,000. The City has not elected to grant this additional exemption.

In the case of residence homestead exemptions granted under Section 1-b, Article VIII, ad valorem taxes may continue to be levied against the value of homesteads exempted where ad valorem taxes have previously been pledged for the payment of debt if cessation of the levy would impair the obligation of the contract by which the debt was created.

State law and Section 2, Article VIII, mandate an additional property tax exemption for disabled veterans or the surviving spouse or children of a deceased veteran who died while on active duty in the armed forces; the exemption applies to either real or personal property with the amount of assessed valuation exempted ranging from \$5,000 to a maximum of \$12,000.

A disabled veteran who receives from the United States Department of Veterans Affairs or its successor 100% disability compensation due to a service-connected disability and a rating of 100% disabled or of individual unemployability is entitled to an exemption from taxation of the total appraised value of the veteran's residence homestead. Furthermore, following the approval by the voters at a November 8, 2011 statewide election, effective January 1, 2012, the surviving spouse of a deceased veteran who had received a disability rating of 100% is entitled to receive a residential homestead exemption equal to the exemption received by the deceased spouse until such surviving spouse remarries. On November 3, 2015, Texas voters approved an amendment to this law to provide for the exemption from ad valorem taxation for those surviving spouses of veterans who died before 2011, of which such amendment applies for the tax year beginning on or after January 1, 2016.

Effective January 1, 2018, a partially disabled veteran or the surviving spouse of a partially disabled veteran is entitled to an exemption equal to the percentage of the veteran's disability, if the residence was donated at less than market value to the veteran by a charitable organization.

Following the approval by the voters at a November 7, 2017 statewide election (with an effective date of January 1, 2018), the surviving spouse of a first responder who is killed or fatally injured in the line of duty is entitled to a property tax exemption for all or part of the market value of such surviving spouse's residence homestead, if the surviving spouse has not remarried since the first responder's death and said property was the first responder's residence homestead at the time of death. Such exemption is transferable to a different property of the surviving spouse, if the surviving spouse has not remarried, in an amount equal to the exemption received on the prior residence in the last year in which such exemption was received.

Following the approval by the voters at a November 5, 2013 statewide election, a partially disabled veteran or the surviving spouse of a partially disabled veteran is entitled to an exemption equal to the percentage of the veteran's disability, if the residence was donated at no cost to the veteran by a charitable organization.

Also approved by the November 5, 2013, election was a constitutional amendment providing that the surviving spouse of a member of the armed forces who is killed in action is entitled to a property tax exemption for all or a part of the market value of such surviving spouse's residence homestead, if the surviving spouse has not remarried since the service member's death and said property was the service member's residence homestead at the time of death. Such exemption is transferable to a different property of the surviving spouse, if the surviving spouse has not remarried, in an amount equal to the exemption received on the prior residence in the last year in which such exemption was received.

Exemptions for Freeport Goods and Goods-in-Transit

Article VIII, Section 1-j of the Texas Constitution provides for an exemption from ad valorem taxation for "freeport property," which is defined as goods detained in the state for 175 days or less for the purpose of assembly, storage, manufacturing, processing or fabrication. Taxing units that took action prior to April 1, 1990 may continue to tax freeport property and decisions to continue to tax freeport property may be reversed in the future. However, decisions to exempt freeport property are not subject to reversal. In addition, effective for tax years 2008 and thereafter, Article VIII, Section 1-n of the Texas Constitution provides for an exemption from taxation for "goods-in-transit", which are defined as personal property acquired or imported into the state and transported to another location inside or outside the state within 175 days of the date the property was acquired or imported into the state. The exemption excludes oil, natural gas, petroleum products, aircraft and special inventory, including motor vehicle, vessel and out-board motor, heavy equipment and manufactured housing inventory. After holding a public hearing, a taxing unit may take action by January 1 of the year preceding a tax year to tax goods-in-transit during the following tax year. A taxpayer may obtain only a freeport exemption or a goods-in-transit exemption for items of personal property. Senate Bill 1, passed by the 82nd Texas Legislature, 1st Called Session, requires again that the governmental entities take affirmative action prior to December 31, 2011 to continue its taxation of goods-in-transit in the 2012 tax year and beyond.

The City took official action before January 1, 1990 to tax freeport property. On December 6, 2011 the City Council took official action to tax goods-in-transit.

Tax Abatement

The City may designate areas within the City as a reinvestment zone. Thereafter, the City may enter into tax abatement agreements with owners of property within the zone. Prior to entering into a tax abatement agreement, each entity must adopt guidelines and criteria for establishing tax abatement, which each entity with taxing authority over the property will follow in granting tax abatement to owners of property. The tax abatement agreement may exempt from ad valorem taxation by each of the applicable taxing jurisdictions, including the City, for a period of up to ten (10) years, all or any part of any increase in the assessed valuation of property covered by the agreement over its assessed valuation in the year in which the agreement is executed, on the condition that the property owner make specified improvements or repairs to the property in conformity with the terms of the tax abatement. The terms of all tax abatement agreements must be substantially the same. The City has adopted criteria and entered into abatement agreements with Alamo Group, Mosheim Mansion, Stravinski, Advanced Home Health, The Ticket, Continental Automotive Systems, and Caterpillar.

Cities are also authorized, pursuant to Chapter 380, Texas Local Government Code (“Chapter 380”) to establish programs to promote state or local economic development and to stimulate business and commercial activity in the City. In accordance with a program established pursuant to Chapter 380, the City may make loans or grants of public funds for economic development purposes, however, no obligations secured by ad valorem taxes may be issued for such purposes unless approved by voters of the City.

See Footnote 1 to table entitled “Top Ten Taxpayers and Their 2017 Valuations” included in APPENDIX A to this Official Statement for a description of an economic development agreement between the City and Caterpillar Inc. and a payment in lieu of taxes agreement with CPS Energy concerning the Rio Nogales Combined Cycle Natural Gas electric generation facility.

Tax Increment Financing Reinvestment Zones

The City may create one or more tax increment financing reinvestment zones within the City (“TIRZ”), under which the tax values on property in the zone are “frozen” at the value of the property at the time of creation of the zone. Other overlapping taxing units levying taxes in the TIRZ may agree to contribute all or part of future ad valorem taxes levied and collected against the value of property in the TIRZ in excess of the “frozen values” to pay or finance the costs of certain public improvements in the TIRZ. Taxes levied by the City against the values of real property in the TIRZ in excess of the “frozen” value are not available for general City use but are restricted to paying or financing “project costs” within the TIRZ.

City and Taxpayer Remedies

Under certain circumstances, taxpayers and taxing units, including the City, may appeal the orders of the Appraisal Review Board by filing a timely petition for review in district court within 45 days after notice is received that a final order has been entered. In such event, the property value in question may be determined by the court, or by a jury, if requested by any party, or through binding arbitration, if requested by the taxpayer. Additionally, taxing units may bring suit against the Appraisal District to compel compliance with the Tax Code.

The Tax Code sets forth notice and hearing procedures for certain tax rate increases by the City and provides for taxpayer referenda that could result in the repeal of certain tax increases. The Tax Code also establishes a procedure for notice to property owners of reappraisals reflecting increased property value, appraisals which are higher than renditions, and appraisals of property not previously on an appraisal roll.

The Financial Institutions Act of 1989

The “Financial Institutions Reform, Recovery and Enforcement Act of 1989” (“FIRREA”), enacted on August 9, 1989, contains certain provisions which affect the time for protesting property valuations, the fixing of tax liens and the collection of penalties and interest on delinquent taxes on real property owned by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (“FDIC”). Under FIRREA, real property held by the FDIC is still subject to ad valorem taxation, but such act states that (i) no real property of the FDIC shall be subject to foreclosure or sale without the consent of the FDIC and no involuntary lien shall attach to such property, (ii) the FDIC shall not be liable for any penalties or fines, including those arising from the failure to pay any real property tax when due, (iii) no personal property owned by FDIC is subject to ad valorem taxation, and (iv) notwithstanding failure of a person to challenge an appraisal in accordance with State law, such value shall be determined as of the period for which such tax is imposed.

As of the date hereof, the City is not aware of any significant properties in the City which are under the control of the FDIC, however, real property could come under their control while acting as the receiver of an insolvent financial institution. Accordingly, to the extent the FIRREA provisions are valid and applicable to property in the City, and to the extent that the FDIC attempts to enforce the same, the provisions may affect the time at which the City can collect taxes on property owned by the FDIC, if any, in the City.

Levy and Collection of Taxes

The City is responsible for the levy and collection of its taxes unless it elects to transfer such functions to another governmental entity. By the later of September 30 or 60 days after the certified appraisal roll is delivered to the City, the rate of taxation is set by the City based upon the valuation of property within the City as of the preceding January 1. Taxes are due October 1, or when billed, whichever comes later, and become delinquent after January 31 of the following year. A delinquent tax incurs a penalty of six percent (6%) of the amount of the tax for the first calendar month it is delinquent, plus one percent (1%) for each additional month or portion of a month the tax remains unpaid prior to July 1 of the year in which it becomes delinquent. If the tax is not paid by July 1 of the year in which it becomes delinquent, the tax incurs a total penalty of twelve percent (12%) regardless of the number of months the tax has been delinquent and incurs an additional penalty of up to twenty percent (20%) if imposed by the City. The delinquent tax also accrues interest at a rate of one percent (1%) for each month or portion of a month it remains unpaid. The Tax Code also makes provision for the split payment of taxes, discounts for early payment and the postponement of the delinquency date of taxes under certain circumstances. The City does not allow split payments or discounts.

City's Rights in the Event of Tax Delinquencies

Taxes levied by the City are a personal obligation of the owner of the property as of January 1 of the year for which the tax is imposed. On January 1 of each year, a tax lien attaches to property to secure the payment of all state and local taxes, penalties, and interest ultimately imposed for the year on the property. The lien exists in favor of the State of Texas and each local taxing unit, including the City, having power to tax the property. The City's tax lien is on a parity with tax liens of such other taxing units. A tax lien on real property takes priority over the claim of most creditors and other holders of liens on the property encumbered by the tax lien, whether or not the debt or lien existed before the attachment of the tax lien; however, whether a lien of the United States is on a parity with or takes priority over a tax lien of the City is determined by applicable federal law. Personal property, under certain circumstances, is subject to seizure and sale for the payment of delinquent taxes, penalty, and interest.

At any time after taxes on property become delinquent, the City may file suit to foreclose the lien securing payment of the tax, to enforce personal liability for the tax, or both. In filing a suit to foreclose a tax lien on real property, the City must join other taxing units that have claims for delinquent taxes against all or part of the same property. Collection of delinquent taxes may be adversely affected by the amount of taxes owed to other taxing units, by the effects of market conditions on the foreclosure sale price, by taxpayer redemption rights (a taxpayer may redeem property within two (2) years after the purchaser's deed issued at the foreclosure sale is filed in the City records) or by bankruptcy proceedings which restrict the collection of taxpayer debts. Federal bankruptcy law provides that an automatic stay of actions by creditors and other entities, including governmental units, goes into effect with the filing of any petition in bankruptcy. The automatic stay prevents governmental units from foreclosing on property and prevents liens for post-petition taxes from attaching to property and obtaining secured creditor status unless, in either case, an order lifting the stay is obtained from the bankruptcy court. In many cases, post-petition taxes are paid as an administrative expense of the estate in bankruptcy or by order of the bankruptcy court.

TAX RATE LIMITATIONS

Article XI, Section 5 of the Texas Constitution, applicable to cities of more than 5,000 population: \$2.50 per \$100 assessed valuation. The City has adopted a Home Rule Charter that imposes a tax rate of up to the Constitutional limit of \$2.50 per \$100 of assessed valuation for all City purposes.

No direct funded debt limitation is imposed on the City under current Texas law or the City's Home Rule Charter. Article XI, Section 5 of the Texas Constitution is applicable to the City, and limits its maximum ad valorem tax rate to \$2.50 per \$100 assessed valuation for all City purposes. The City operates under a Home Rule Charter, which adopts this constitutional provision. The Texas Attorney General has adopted an administrative policy that generally prohibits the issuance of debt by a municipality such as the City if its issuance produces debt service requirements exceeding that which can be paid from \$1.50 of the foregoing \$2.50 maximum tax rate calculated at 90% collection. The issuance of the Certificates does not violate this constitutional provision or the Texas Attorney General's administrative policy.

The later of September 30 or 60 days after the date the certified appraisal roll is received by the City, the City Council adopts a tax rate per \$100 taxable value for the current year. The tax rate consists of two components: (1) a rate for funding of maintenance and operation expenditures; and (2) a rate for debt service.

The Tax Code

The City must annually calculate and publicize its "effective tax rate" and "rollback tax rate." The City Council may not adopt a tax rate that exceeds the lower of the rollback rate or the effective tax rate until it has held two public hearings on the proposed increase following notice to the taxpayers and otherwise complied with the Tax Code. If the adopted tax rate exceeds the rollback tax rate, the qualified voters of the City, by petition, may require that an election be held to determine whether or not to reduce the tax rate adopted for the current year to the rollback tax rate.

"Effective tax rate" means the rate that will produce last year's total tax levy (adjusted) from this year's total taxable values (adjusted). "Adjusted" means lost values are not included in the calculation of last year's taxes and new values are not included in this year's taxable values.

"Rollback tax rate: means the rate that will produce last year's maintenance and operation tax levy (adjusted) from this year's values (adjusted) multiplied by 1.08 plus a rate that will produce this year's debt service from this year's values (adjusted) divided by the anticipated tax collection rate.

Reference is made to the Tax Code for definitive requirements for the levy and collection of ad valorem taxes and the calculation of the various defined tax rates.

The Tax Code provides certain cities and counties in the State the option of assessing a maximum one-half percent (1/2%) sales tax on retail sales of taxable items for the purpose of reducing its ad valorem taxes if approved by a majority of the voters in a local option election. If the additional tax is approved and levied, the ad valorem property tax levy must be reduced by the amount of the estimated sales tax revenues to be generated in the current year. Further, the Tax Code provides certain cities the option of assessing a maximum one-half percent (1/2%) sales tax on retail sales of taxable items

for economic development purposes if approved by a majority of the voters in a local option election. The City has approved a 1/4% sales tax for property tax reduction and a 1/4% sales tax for economic development.

TAX MATTERS

Tax Exemption

The delivery of the Certificates is subject to the opinion of Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP, San Antonio, Texas, Bond Counsel, to the effect that interest on the Certificates for federal income tax purposes (1) is excludable from the gross income, as defined in section 61 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended to the date hereof (the "Code"), of the owners thereof pursuant to section 103 of the Code and existing regulations, published rulings, and court decisions, and (2) will not be included in computing the alternative minimum taxable income of the owners thereof who are individuals or, except as hereinafter described, corporations. The statute, regulations, rulings, and court decisions on which such opinion is based are subject to change. A form of Bond Counsel's opinion appears as APPENDIX D hereto.

For taxable years that began before January 1, 2018, the Certificates owned by a corporation will be included in such corporation's adjusted current earnings for purposes of calculating the alternative minimum taxable income of such corporation, other than an S corporation, a qualified mutual fund, a real estate investment trust (REIT), a financial asset securitization investment trust (FASIT), or a real estate mortgage investment conduit (REMIC). The alternative minimum tax on corporations has been repealed for taxable years beginning on or after January 1, 2018.

In rendering the foregoing opinions, Bond Counsel will rely upon representations and certifications of the City made in certificates pertaining to the use, expenditure, and investment of the proceeds of the Certificates and will assume continuing compliance by the City with the provisions of the Ordinance subsequent to the issuance of the Certificates. The Ordinance contains covenants by the City with respect to, among other matters, the use of the proceeds of the Certificates and the facilities financed therewith by persons other than state or local governmental units, the manner in which the proceeds of the Certificates are to be invested, the periodic calculation and payment to the United States Treasury of arbitrage "profits" from the investment of the proceeds, and the reporting of certain information to the United States Treasury. Failure to comply with any of these covenants may cause interest on the Certificates to be includable in the gross income of the owners thereof from the date of the issuance of the Certificates.

Except as described above, Bond Counsel will express no other opinion with respect to any other federal, state or local tax consequences under present law, or proposed legislation, resulting from the receipt or accrual of interest on, or the acquisition or disposition of, the Certificates. Bond Counsel's opinion is not a guarantee of a result, but represents its legal judgment based upon its review of existing statutes, regulations, published rulings and court decisions and the representations and covenants of the City described above. No ruling has been sought from the Internal Revenue Service (the "IRS") with respect to the matters addressed in the opinion of Bond Counsel, and Bond Counsel's opinion is not binding on the IRS. The IRS has an ongoing program of auditing the tax-exempt status of the interest on municipal obligations. If an audit of the Certificates is commenced, under current procedures the IRS is likely to treat the City as the "taxpayer," and the owners of the Certificates would have no right to participate in the audit process. In responding to or defending an audit of the tax-exempt status of the interest on the Certificates, the City may have different or conflicting interests from the owners of the Certificates. Public awareness of any future audit of the Certificates could adversely affect the value and liquidity of the Certificates during the pendency of the audit, regardless of its ultimate outcome.

Tax Changes

Existing law may change to reduce or eliminate the benefit to Registered Owners of the exclusion of interest on the Certificates from gross income for federal income tax purposes. Any proposed legislation or administrative action, whether or not taken, could also affect the value and marketability of the Certificates. Prospective purchasers of the Certificates should consult with their own tax advisors with respect to any proposed or future changes in tax law.

Ancillary Tax Consequences

Prospective purchasers of the Certificates should be aware that the ownership of tax-exempt obligations such as the Certificates may result in collateral federal tax consequences to, among others, financial institutions, property and casualty insurance companies, life insurance companies, certain foreign corporations doing business in the United States, S corporations with subchapter C earnings and profits, owners of an interest in a FASIT, individual recipients of Social Security or Railroad Retirement benefits, individuals otherwise qualifying for the earned income tax credit and taxpayers who may be deemed to have incurred or continued indebtedness to purchase or carry, or who have paid or incurred certain expenses allocable to, tax-exempt obligations. Prospective purchasers should consult their own tax advisors as to the applicability of these consequences to their particular circumstances.

Tax Accounting Treatment of Discount Certificates

The initial public offering price to be paid for certain Certificates may be less than the amount payable on such Certificates at maturity (the "Discount Certificates"). An amount equal to the difference between the initial public offering price of a Discount Certificate (assuming that a substantial amount of the Discount Certificates of that maturity are sold to the public at such price) and the amount payable at maturity constitutes original issue discount to the initial purchaser of such Discount

Certificates. A portion of such original issue discount, allocable to the holding period of a Discount Certificate by the initial purchaser, will be treated as interest for federal income tax purposes, excludable from gross income on the same terms and conditions as those for other interest on the Certificates. Such interest is considered to be accrued actuarially in accordance with the constant interest method over the life of a Discount Certificate, taking into account the semiannual compounding of accrued interest, at the yield to maturity on such Discount Certificate and generally will be allocated to an initial purchaser in a different amount from the amount of the payment denominated as interest actually received by the initial purchaser during his taxable year.

However, such accrued interest may be required to be taken into account in determining the alternative tax on corporations for taxable years that began before January 1, 2018 and the amount of the branch profits tax applicable to certain foreign corporations doing business in the United States, even though there will not be a corresponding cash payment. In addition, the accrual of such interest may result in certain other collateral federal income tax consequences to, among others, financial institutions, property and casualty insurance companies, life insurance companies, S corporations with subchapter C earnings and profits, owners of an interest in a FASIT, individual recipients of Social Security or Railroad Retirement benefits, individuals otherwise qualifying for the earned income tax credit, and taxpayers who may be deemed to have incurred or continued indebtedness to purchase or carry, or who have paid or incurred certain expenses allocable to, tax-exempt obligations.

In the event of the sale or other taxable disposition of a Discount Certificate prior to maturity, the amount realized by such owner in excess of the basis of such Discount Certificate in the hands of such owner (adjusted upward by the portion of the original issue discount allocable to the period for which such Discount Certificate was held) is includable in gross income.

Owners of Discount Certificates should consult with their own tax advisors with respect to the determination for federal income tax purposes of accrued interest upon disposition of Discount Certificates and with respect to the state and local tax consequences of owning Discount Certificates. It is possible that, under applicable provisions governing determination of state and local income taxes, accrued interest on the Discount Certificates may be deemed to be received in the year of accrual even though there will not be a corresponding cash payment.

Tax Accounting Treatment of Premium Certificates

The initial public offering price to be paid for certain Certificates may be greater than the stated redemption price on such Certificates at maturity (the "Premium Certificates"). An amount equal to the difference between the initial public offering price of a Premium Certificate (assuming that a substantial amount of the Premium Certificates of that maturity are sold to the public at such price) and its stated redemption price at maturity constitutes premium to the initial purchaser of such Premium Certificates. The basis for federal income tax purposes of a Premium Certificate in the hands of such initial purchaser must be reduced each year by the amortizable bond premium, although no federal income tax deduction is allowed as a result of such reduction in basis for amortizable bond premium with respect to the Premium Certificates. Such reduction in basis will increase the amount of any gain (or decrease the amount of any loss) to be recognized for federal income tax purposes upon a sale or other taxable disposition of a Premium Certificate. The amount of premium which is amortizable each year by an initial purchaser is determined by using such purchaser's yield to maturity.

Purchasers of the Premium Certificates should consult with their own tax advisors with respect to the determination of amortizable bond premium on Premium Certificates for federal income tax purposes and with respect to the state and local tax consequences of owning and disposing of Premium Certificates.

CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION

In the Ordinance, the City has made the following agreements for the benefit of the holders and Beneficial Owners of the Certificates. The City is required to observe the agreement for so long as it remains obligated to advance funds to pay the Certificates. Under the agreement, the City will be obligated to provide certain updated financial information and operating data annually and timely notice of specified events to the MSRB. The information provided to the MSRB through EMMA is available free of charge at www.emma.msrb.org.

Annual Reports

Under Texas law, including, but not limited to, Chapter 103, as amended, Texas Local Government Code, the City must keep its fiscal records in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, must have its financial accounts and records audited by a certified public accountant and must maintain each audit report within 180 days after the close of the City's fiscal year. The City's fiscal records and audit reports are available for public inspection during the regular business hours, and the City is required to provide a copy of the City's audit reports to any bondholder or other member of the public within a reasonable time on request upon payment of charges prescribed by the Texas General Services Commission.

The City will provide certain updated financial information and operating data to the MSRB annually. The information to be updated with respect to the City includes all quantitative financial information and operating data of the general type included in this Official Statement. The information is of the type included in APPENDIX A, exclusive of the table reflecting "Consolidated Overlapping Gross Funded Debt Payable from Ad Valorem Taxes," and in APPENDIX C. The City will update and provide this information within six months after the end of each of its fiscal years ending in and after 2018.

The City may provide updated information in full text or may incorporate by reference certain other publicly available documents, as permitted by Rule 15c2-12. The updated information will include audited financial statements, if it commissions an audit and the audit is completed by the required time. If audited financial statements are not provided with annual information, the City will provide unaudited financial statements at such time and later provide audited financial statements when and if the audited financial statements become available. Any such financial statements will be prepared in accordance with the accounting principles described in APPENDIX C or such other accounting principles as the City may be required to employ from time to time pursuant to state law or regulation.

The City's current fiscal year end is September 30. Accordingly, it must provide updated information by the last day of March in each year, unless it changes its fiscal year. If the City changes its fiscal year, it will notify the MSRB.

Notice of Certain Events

The City will file with the MSRB notice of any of the following events with respect to the Certificates in a timely manner (and not more than 10 business days after occurrence of the event): (1) principal and interest payment delinquencies; (2) non-payment related defaults, if material; (3) unscheduled draws on debt service reserves reflecting financial difficulties; (4) unscheduled draws on credit enhancements reflecting financial difficulties; (5) substitution of credit or liquidity providers, or their failure to perform; (6) adverse tax opinions, the issuance by the Internal Revenue Service of proposed or final determinations of taxability, Notices of Proposed Issue (IRS Form 5701-TEB), or other material notices or determinations with respect to the tax status of the Certificates, or other material events affecting the tax status of the Certificates; (7) modifications to rights of holders of the Certificates, if material; (8) Certificate calls, if material, and tender offers; (9) defeasances; (10) release, substitution, or sale of property securing repayment of the Certificates, if material; (11) rating changes; (12) bankruptcy, insolvency, receivership, or similar event of the City, which shall occur as described below; (13) the consummation of a merger, consolidation, or acquisition involving the City or the sale of all or substantially all of its assets, other than in the ordinary course of business, the entry into a definitive agreement to undertake such an action or the termination of a definitive agreement relating to any such actions, other than pursuant to its terms, if material; and (14) appointment of a successor or additional Paying Agent/Registrar or the change of name of a Paying Agent/Registrar, if material. Neither the Certificates nor the Ordinance make any provision for debt service reserves, credit enhancement, or liquidity enhancement. In addition, the City will provide timely notice of any failure by the City to provide information, data, or financial statements in accordance with its agreement described above under "Annual Reports". The City will provide each notice described in this paragraph to the MSRB.

For these purposes, any event described in clause (12) in the immediately preceding paragraph is considered to occur when any of the following occur; the appointment of a receiver, fiscal agent, or similar officer for the City in a proceeding under the United States Bankruptcy Code or in any other proceeding under state or federal law in which a court or governmental authority has assumed jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the City, or if such jurisdiction has been assumed by leaving the existing governing body and officials or officers in possession but subject to the supervision and orders of a court or governmental authority, or the entry of an order confirming a plan of reorganization, arrangement, or liquidation by a court or governmental authority having supervision or jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the City.

Availability of Information from MSRB

Effective July 1, 2009 (the "EMMA Effective Date"), the SEC implemented amendments to the Rule which approved the establishment by the MSRB of EMMA, which is now the sole successor to the national municipal securities information repositories with respect to filings made in connection with undertakings made under the Rule after the EMMA Effective Date. Commencing with the EMMA Effective Date, all information and documentation filing required to be made by the City in accordance with its undertaking made for the Certificates will be made with the MSRB in electronic format in accordance with MSRB guidelines. Access to such filings will be provided, without charge to the general public, by the MSRB.

With respect to debt of the City issued prior to the EMMA Effective Date, the City remains obligated to make annual required filings, as well as notices of material events, under its continuing disclosure obligations relating to those debt obligations (which includes a continuing obligation to make such filings with the Texas state information repository (the "SID")). Prior to the EMMA Effective Date, the Municipal Advisory Council of Texas (the "MAC") had been designated by the State and approved by the SEC staff as a qualified SID. Subsequent to the EMMA Effective Date, the MAC has entered into a Subscription Agreement with the MSRB pursuant to which the MSRB makes available to the MAC, in electronic format, all Texas-issuer continuing disclosure documents and related information posted to EMMA's website simultaneously with such posting. Until the City receives notice of a change in this contractual agreement between the MAC and EMMA or of a failure of either party to perform as specified thereunder, the City has determined, in reliance on guidance from the MAC, that making its continuing disclosure filings solely with the MSRB will satisfy its obligations to make filings with the SID pursuant to its continuing disclosure agreements entered into prior to the EMMA Effective Date.

Limitations and Amendments

The City has agreed to update information and to provide notices of material events only as described above. The City has not agreed to provide other information that may be relevant or material to a complete presentation of its financial results of operations, condition, or prospects or agreed to update any information that is provided, except as described above. The City

makes no representation or warranty concerning such information or concerning its usefulness to a decision to invest in or sell Certificates at any future date. The City disclaims any contractual or tort liability for damages resulting in whole or in part from any breach of its continuing disclosure agreement or from any statement made pursuant to its agreement, although holders or beneficial owners of Certificates may seek a writ of mandamus to compel the City to comply with its agreement.

The City may amend its continuing disclosure agreement to adapt to changed circumstances that arise from a change in legal requirements, a change in law, or a change in the identity, nature, status, or type of operations of the City, if (1) the agreement, as amended, would have permitted an underwriter to purchase or sell Certificates in the offering described herein in compliance with the Rule, taking into account any amendments or interpretations of the Rule to the date of such amendment, as well as such changed circumstances, and (2) either (a) the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding Certificates consent or (b) any person unaffiliated with the City (such as nationally recognized bond counsel) determines that the amendment will not materially impair the interests of the Beneficial Owners of the Certificates. The City may also repeal or amend these provisions if the SEC amends or repeals the applicable provisions of the Rule or any court of final jurisdiction enters judgment that such provisions of the Rule are invalid, but in either case only if and to the extent that the provisions of this sentence would not prevent an underwriter from lawfully purchasing or selling Certificates in the primary offering of the Certificates giving effect to (a) such provisions as so amended and (b) any amendments or interpretations of the Rule. If the City amends its agreement, it must include with the next financial information and operating data provided in accordance with its agreement described above under "Annual Reports" an explanation, in narrative form, of the reasons for the amendment and of the impact of any change in the type of information and data provided.

Compliance with Prior Undertakings

Except as hereafter described, the City has during the past five years complied in all material respects with continuing disclosure agreements made by it in accordance with the Rule. On March 30, 2015, the City made its timely annual filing which included the audited financial statements for the period ended September 30, 2014. Additionally, S&P (defined herein) has recently upgraded the City's unenhanced ad valorem tax debt rating from "A+"/Positive to "AA-"/Stable. On February 4, 2014, the City filed a material event notice with EMMA related to the rating upgrade from S&P. See "OTHER PERTINENT INFORMATION - Municipal Bond Ratings" herein. As of March 18, 2014 S&P upgraded the Insurance Financial Strength of Assured Guaranty Corporation from "AA-" to "AA." On March 28, 2014 the City filed an event notice with EMMA related to the rating upgrade from S&P.

The City has outstanding multiple series of obligations whose repayment is guaranteed pursuant to bond insurance policies issued by various monoline bond insurance companies (including AMBAC Assurance Corporation, Syncora Guarantee Inc. (formerly XL Capital Assurance Inc.), National Public Finance Guarantee Corporation (formerly MBIA Insurance Corporation), and Assured Guaranty Municipal Corp. (formerly Financial Security Assurance). Beginning in 2008, the ratings on municipal bond insurers were downgraded or withdrawn with frequency; more recently, certain of these insurers have been upgraded. The City's continuing disclosure undertakings made in accordance with the Rule with respect to these insured series of obligations require that notice of rating changes be given only if such change was material within the meaning of federal securities laws. Information about these rating actions was widely and publicly reported, particularly throughout the municipal bond industry. The City is of the position that the occurrence of these events was widely reported or known and that their occurrence was, therefore, not material within the meaning of federal securities laws. Nevertheless, the City has, as of October 1, 2014, filed a notice with EMMA indicating the current enhanced ratings on its outstanding and insured indebtedness.

LEGAL MATTERS

The City will furnish the Purchaser with a complete transcript of proceedings incident to the authorization and issuance of the Certificates, including the unqualified approving legal opinion of the Attorney General of the State of Texas to the effect that the Certificates are valid and legally binding obligations of the City payable from the proceeds of an annual ad valorem tax levied, within the limits prescribed by law, upon all taxable property in the City, and based upon examination of such transcript of proceedings, the approval of certain legal matters by Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP, San Antonio, Texas ("Bond Counsel"), to the effect that the Certificates are valid and legally binding obligations of the City and, subject to the qualifications set forth herein under "TAX MATTERS," the interest on the Certificates is excludable from the gross income of the owners thereof for federal income tax purposes under existing statutes, published rulings, regulations, and court decisions. Bond Counsel has been engaged by and only represents the City. A form of Bond Counsel's opinion appears in Appendix D attached hereto. Bond Counsel was not requested to participate, and did not take part, in the preparation of this Official Statement except as hereinafter noted and such firm has not assumed any responsibility with respect thereto or undertaken independently to verify any of the information contained herein, except that, in their capacity as Bond Counsel, such firm has reviewed the information under the captions "THE CERTIFICATES (except under the subcaptions "Use of Proceeds," "Payment Record," "Delivery," "Additional Bond Issues," and "Defaults and Remedies" as to which no opinion is expressed), "REGISTRATION, TRANSFER AND EXCHANGE," "TAX MATTERS," "LEGAL MATTERS," "LEGAL INVESTMENTS AND ELIGIBILITY TO SECURE PUBLIC FUNDS IN TEXAS," and "OTHER PERTINENT INFORMATION - Registration and Qualification of Certificates for Sale," and "CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION" (except matters discussed under the subcaption "Compliance with Prior Undertakings" as to which no opinion is expressed) in the Official Statement and such firm is of the opinion that the information relating to the Certificates and the legal issues contained under such captions and subcaptions is an accurate and fair description of the laws and the legal issues addressed therein and, with respect to the Certificates, such information conforms to the Ordinance. The legal fees to be

paid to Bond Counsel for services rendered in connection with the issuance of the Certificates are contingent on the sale and delivery of the Certificates. The legal opinion of Bond Counsel will accompany the Certificates deposited with DTC or will be printed on definitive bonds in the event of discontinuance of the Book-Entry-Only System.

The various legal opinions to be delivered concurrently with the delivery of the Certificates express the professional judgment of the attorneys rendering the opinions as to the legal issues explicitly addressed therein. In rendering a legal opinion, the attorney does not become an insurer or guarantor of the expression of professional judgment, of the transaction opined upon, or of the future performance of the parties to the transaction. Nor does the rendering of an opinion guarantee the outcome of any legal dispute that may arise out of the transaction.

LITIGATION

In the opinion of certain officials of the City, the City is not a party to any litigation or other proceedings pending or, to its knowledge, threatened, in any court, agency or other administrative body (either state or federal which, if decided adversely to the City, would have a material adverse effect on the financial statements of the City.

At the time of initial delivery of the Certificates, the City will provide the Purchaser with a certificate to the effect that no litigation of any nature has been filed or is then pending challenging the issuance of the Certificates or that affects the payment and security of the Certificates or in any other manner questioning the issuance, sale, or delivery of the Certificates.

LEGAL INVESTMENTS AND ELIGIBILITY TO SECURE PUBLIC FUNDS IN TEXAS

Section 1201.041 of the Public Securities Procedures Act (Chapter 1201, Texas Government Code) and Section 271.051, as amended, Texas Local Government Code, provides that the Certificates are negotiable instruments governed by Chapter 8, Texas Business and Commerce Code, and are legal and authorized investments for insurance companies, fiduciaries, and trustees, and for the sinking funds of municipalities or other political subdivisions or public agencies of the State of Texas. With respect to investment in the Certificates by municipalities or other political subdivisions or public agencies of the State of Texas, the Public Funds Investment Act, Chapter 2256, Texas Government Code, requires that the Certificates be assigned a rating of at least "A" or its equivalent as to investment quality by a national rating agency. See "OTHER PERTINENT INFORMATION - Municipal Bond Ratings" herein. In addition, various provisions of the Texas Finance Code provide that, subject to a prudent investor standard, the Certificates are legal investments for state banks, savings banks, trust companies with at least \$1 million of capital, and savings and loan associations. The Certificates are eligible to secure deposits of any public funds of the State, its agencies, and its political subdivisions, and are legal security for those deposits to the extent of their market value.

The City has made no investigation of other laws, rules, regulations or investment criteria which might apply to such institutions or entities or which might limit the suitability of the Certificates for any of the foregoing purposes or limit the authority of such institutions or entities to purchase or invest in the Certificates for such purposes. The City has made no review of laws in other states to determine whether the Certificates are legal investments for various institutions in those states.

OTHER PERTINENT INFORMATION

Authenticity of Financial Data and Other Information

The financial data and other information contained herein have been obtained from the City's records, audited financial statements and other sources that are believed to be reliable. There is no guarantee that any of the assumptions or estimates contained herein will be realized. All of the summaries of the statutes, documents and resolutions contained in this Official Statement are made subject to all of the provisions of such statutes, documents and resolutions. These summaries do not purport to be complete statements of such provisions and reference is made to such documents for further information. Reference is made to original documents in all respects.

Registration and Qualification of Certificates for Sale

The sale of the Certificates has not been registered under the federal Securities Act of 1933, as amended, in reliance upon the exemption provided thereunder by Section 3(a)(2); and the Certificates have not been qualified under the Securities Act of Texas in reliance upon various exemptions contained therein; nor have the Certificates been qualified under the securities act of any other jurisdiction. The City assumes no responsibility for qualification of the Certificates under the securities laws of any jurisdiction in which the Certificates may be sold, assigned, pledged, hypothecated or otherwise transferred. This disclaimer of responsibility for qualification for sale or other disposition of the Certificates shall not be construed as an interpretation of any kind with regard to the availability of any exemption from securities registration provisions.

Municipal Bond Ratings

The City has made application to Fitch Ratings, Inc. ("Fitch") and S&P Global Ratings ("S&P"), for contract ratings on the Certificates. See "CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION - Compliance with Prior Undertakings" herein.

An explanation of the significance of such ratings may be obtained from Fitch and S&P. The respective rating of the Certificates by Fitch and S&P reflects only the view of each company at the time the rating is given, and the City makes no representation as to the appropriateness of each rating. There is no assurance that the rating will continue for any given period of time, or that either rating will not be revised downward or withdrawn entirely by either Fitch or S&P, if, in the respective judgment of Fitch or S&P, circumstances so warrant. Any such downward revision or withdrawal of either rating may have an adverse effect on the market price of the Certificates.

Financial Advisor

SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc. (the "Financial Advisor") is employed as the Financial Advisor to the City in connection with the issuance of the Certificates. The Financial Advisor's fee for services rendered with respect to the sale of the Certificates is contingent upon the issuance and delivery of the Certificates. In the normal course of business, the Financial Advisor may also from time to time sell investment securities to the City for the investment of bond proceeds or other funds of the City upon the request of the City. SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc., in its capacity as Financial Advisor, has relied on the opinion of Bond Counsel and has not verified and does not assume any responsibility for the information, covenants, and representations contained in any of the bond documentation with respect to the federal income tax status of the Certificates.

Initial Purchaser

After requesting bids for the Certificates, the City accepted the bid of _____ (the "Purchaser") to purchase the Certificates at the interest rates shown on page -ii- of the Official Statement at a price of \$ _____, which is inclusive of a Purchaser's discount of \$ _____, plus accrued interest from their dated date through their date of initial delivery. The City can give no assurance that any trading market will be developed for the Certificates after their sale by the City to the Purchaser. The City has no control over the price at which the Certificates are subsequently sold and the initial yield at which the Certificates will be priced and reoffered will be established by and will be the responsibility of the Purchaser.

Forward-Looking Statements

The statements contained in this Official Statement, and in any other information provided by the City, that are not purely historical, are forward-looking statements, including statements regarding the City's expectations, hopes, intentions, or strategies regarding the future. Readers should not place undue reliance on forward-looking statements. All forward-looking statements included in this Official Statement are based on information available to the City on the date hereof, and the City assumes no obligation to update any such forward-looking statements.

It is important to note that the City's actual results could differ materially from those discussed in such forward-looking statements.

The forward-looking statements included herein are necessarily based on various assumptions and estimates and are inherently subject to various risks and uncertainties, including risks and uncertainties relating to the possible invalidity of the underlying assumptions and estimates and possible changes or developments in social, economic, business, industry, market, legal and regulatory circumstances and conditions and actions taken or omitted to be taken by third parties, including customers, suppliers, business partners and competitors, and legislative, judicial and other governmental authorities and officials. Assumptions related to the foregoing involve judgments with respect to, among other things, future economic, competitive, and market conditions and future business decisions, all of which are difficult or impossible to predict accurately and many of which are beyond the control of the City. Any of such assumptions could be inaccurate and, therefore, there can be no assurance that the forward-looking statements included in this Official Statement would prove to be accurate.

Information from External Sources

References to web site addresses presented herein are for informational purposes only and may be in the form of a hyperlink solely for the reader's convenience. Unless specified otherwise, such web sites and the information or links contained therein are not incorporated into, and are not part of, this Official Statement for purposes of, and as that term is defined in, SEC Rule 15c2-12.

Certification of the Official Statement

At the time of payment for and delivery of the Certificates, the Purchaser will be furnished a certificate, executed by proper officers, acting in their official capacity, to the effect that to the best of their knowledge and belief: (a) the description and statements of or pertaining to the City contained in its Official Statement, and any addenda, supplement or amendment thereto, on the date of such Official Statement on the date of sale of the Certificates and the acceptance of the best bid therefor, and on the date of the initial delivery of the Certificates, were and are true and correct in all material respects; (b) insofar as the City and its affairs, including its financial affairs, are concerned, such Official Statement did not and does not contain an untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein, in the light of circumstances under which they are made, not misleading; (c) insofar as the description and statements, including financial data, of or pertaining to entities, other than the City, and their activities contained in such Official Statement are concerned, such statements and data have been obtained from sources which the City believes to be reliable and that the City has no reason to believe that they are untrue in any material respect; and

(d) there has been no material adverse change in the financial condition of the City since September 30, 2015, the date of the last audited financial statements of the City.

Authorization of the Official Statement

No person has been authorized to give any information or to make any representations other than those contained in this Official Statement, and if given or made, such other information or representations must not be relied upon as having been authorized by the City.

This Official Statement has been approved by the City Council of the City for distribution in accordance with provisions of the United States Securities and Exchange Commission's rule codified at 17 C.F.R. Section 240.15c-12, as amended.

The Ordinance also approved the form and content of this Official Statement and any addenda, supplement or amendment thereto and authorized its further use in the reoffering of the Certificates by the Purchaser.

CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS

/s/ _____
Mayor

ATTEST:

/s/ _____
City Secretary

APPENDIX A
SELECTED FINANCIAL INFORMATION
OF THE CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS

(this page intentionally left blank)

VALUATION AND DEBT DATA

General Purpose, General Obligation Bonds and Certificates

2017 Total Appraised Valuation ⁽¹⁾	\$2,582,736,277
Less Exemptions and Exclusions ⁽²⁾	<u>623,829,863</u>
2017 Net Taxable Assessed Valuation (100% of market value)	\$1,958,906,414

⁽¹⁾ Source: Guadalupe Appraisal District. The Appraisal Review Board approved Certified Values as of February 1, 2018.

⁽²⁾ Does not Include frozen values.

Outstanding Debt By Issues

**Amount
Outstanding
At 2-01-2018⁽¹⁾**

General Obligation Debt	
Certificates of Obligation, Series 2010	\$ 10,165,000
Certificates of Obligation, Series 2011	1,955,000 ⁽²⁾
General Obligation Refunding Bonds, Series 2011	1,430,000 ⁽³⁾
General Obligation Refunding Bonds, Series 2013	5,625,000 ⁽³⁾
Certificates of Obligation, Series 2013	1,825,000 ⁽²⁾
General Obligation Bonds, Series 2014	19,100,000
General Obligation Refunding Bonds, Series 2014	7,310,000
General Obligation Refunding Bonds, Series 2015	13,800,000 ⁽³⁾
Certificates of Obligation, Series 2016	12,345,000
Certificates of Obligation, Series 2016A	8,800,000
Tax Notes, Series 2017	650,000
Tax Notes, Series 2018	649,000
Certificates of Obligation, Series 2018 (the "Certificates")	<u>6,475,000</u>
Total General Obligation Debt	\$90,129,000
Less: Self-supporting Debt	<u>9,300,000</u>
Net Tax Supported General Obligation Debt	80,829,000
Less: Interest and Sinking Fund Balance (as of 1-1-2018)	<u>3,120,322</u>
Net General Obligation Debt Outstanding	\$77,708,678
Ratio Tax-Supported General Obligation Debt to 2017 Net Taxable Assessed Valuation	4.12%
Ratio Net General Obligation Debt to 2017 Net Taxable Assessed Valuation	3.97%

⁽¹⁾ Unaudited.

⁽²⁾ A portion of debt service on this issue is supported by payments from the Seguin Economic Development Corporation.

⁽³⁾ A portion of debt service of this issue is supported by payments from the City's Utility System.

2010 U. S. Census Population - 25,175
 2017 Estimated Population - 29,241
 Per Capita 2017 Net Taxable Assessed Valuation - \$66,991.77
 Per Capita Total Net Tax Supported General Obligation Debt - \$2,764.24
 Per Capita Net General Obligation Debt - \$2,657.52

General Obligation Bonds Authorized but Unissued

The City has no authorized and unissued general obligation voted authority from any bond election; however, the City may, from time to time and without an election, issue debt obligations payable from its collection of ad valorem taxes, including (but not limited to) certificates of obligation, public property finance contractual obligations, certain types of capital leases, and tax notes.

TAXATION DATA

Tax Rate Distribution

<u>Tax Year</u>	<u>2017</u>	<u>2016</u>	<u>2015</u>	<u>2014</u>	<u>2013</u>
Local Maintenance	\$0.2879	\$0.3104	\$0.3126	\$0.3000	\$0.2942
Interest and Sinking Fund	<u>.2533</u>	<u>.2308</u>	<u>.2130</u>	<u>.2244</u>	<u>.2231</u>
Totals	\$0.5412	\$0.5412	\$0.5256	\$0.5244	\$0.5173

Tax Collection Data

Taxes are due October 1 and become delinquent after January 31. No split payments or discounts are allowed. Penalties and Interest: (a) a delinquent tax incurs a penalty of six percent (6%) of the amount of the tax for the first calendar month it is delinquent plus one percent (1%) for each additional month or portion of a month the tax remains unpaid prior to July 1 of the year in which it becomes delinquent. However, a tax delinquent on July 1 incurs a total penalty of twelve percent (12%) of the amount of the delinquent tax without regard to the number of months the tax has been delinquent; (b) a delinquent tax accrues interest at a rate of one percent (1%) for each month or portion of a month the tax remains unpaid; and an additional penalty up to a maximum of twenty percent (20%) of taxes, penalty and interest may be imposed to defray costs of collection for taxes delinquent after July 1. All percentage of collections set forth below exclude penalties and interest.

Tax Year	Taxable Assessed Valuation ⁽¹⁾	Tax Rate	% Collections		Year Ending
			Current	Total	
2005	\$ 947,696,195	\$0.4326	96.43%	98.95%	09-30-06
2006	972,333,667	0.4814	95.53%	99.47%	09-30-07
2007	1,115,537,811	0.4726	95.94%	98.37%	09-30-08
2008	1,214,768,682	0.4823	96.90%	102.35%	09-30-09
2009	1,279,059,508	0.4600	97.36%	99.18%	09-30-10
2010	1,328,080,868	0.4893	97.02%	98.96%	09-30-11
2011	1,388,352,916	0.5073	97.20%	99.34%	09-30-12
2012	1,428,682,820	0.5073	98.14%	108.00%	09-30-13
2013	1,369,727,941	0.5173	97.81%	99.80%	09-30-14
2014	1,398,277,798	0.5244	98.41%	99.34%	09-30-15
2015	1,472,700,972 ⁽²⁾	0.5256	97.93%	99.83%	09-30-16
2016	1,685,614,220 ⁽²⁾	0.5412	97.14%	99.89%	09-30-17
2017	1,958,906,109	0.5412	(in the process of collection)		09-30-18

⁽¹⁾ City's Comprehensive Annual Financial Report.
⁽²⁾ Guadalupe Appraisal District.
⁽³⁾ See the table of Top 10 Taxpayers and Their 2015 Valuations herein.

Non-Funded Debt

Capital Leases

The City has future commitments resulting from a lease for financing the acquisition of fifty (50) golf carts, a mower, and a document folder/insertor. The City has also financed the acquisition of the Springs Hill Wastewater Collection System through its Utility Fund, with a down payment of \$95,000. These lease agreements qualify as capital leases for accounting purposes and, therefore, have been recorded at the present value of their future minimum lease payments as of the inception date.

Future minimum obligations and the net present value of these minimum lease payments as of September 30, 2016 are as follows:

Year Ending September 30,	Governmental Activities	Business Type Activities
2018	\$ 450,771	\$ -
2019	508,044	35,000
2020	299,582	35,000
2021	334,872	-
Total Payments	1,593,269	70,000
Less: Amount Representing Interest	(75,971)	(33,880)
Present value of minimum lease payments	\$1,517,298	\$36,120

Source: City's Comprehensive Annual Financial Report.

Schedule of Delinquent Taxes Receivable Fiscal Year Ended September 30, 2017 (Unaudited)

<u>Year Ended 9/30</u>	<u>Ending Balance</u>
2008	\$ 8,922
2009	11,623
2010	19,141
2011	16,590
2012	19,620
2013	24,290
2014	40,661
2015	51,400
2016	73,881
2017	237,258
Total	\$503,386

Source: City's Comprehensive Annual Financial Report.

Municipal Sales Taxes

The City has adopted the Municipal Sales and Use Tax Act, VATCS, Tax Code, Chapter 321, which grants the City the power to impose and levy a 1% Local Sales and Use Tax within the City, the proceeds of which are credited to the General Fund and are not pledged to the payment of the Certificates. Collection and enforcement are effected through the offices of the Comptroller of Public Accounts, State of Texas, who remits the proceeds of the tax, after deduction of a 2% service fee, to the City monthly. In addition to the 1% sales tax, the City collects one-quarter percent (1/4 of 1%) to be used to reduce the property tax rate. Subject to the approval of a majority of the voters in a local option election, state law also provides certain cities the option of assessing a sales and use tax for a variety of other purposes, including economic and industrial development, municipal street maintenance and repair, and sports and community venues. State law limits the maximum aggregate sales and use tax rate in any area to 8¼%. Accordingly, the collection of local sales and use taxes in the area of the City (including sales and use taxes levied by the City) is limited to no more than 2% (when combined with the State sales and use tax rate of 6 1/4%). Beginning in fiscal year 1995, the City has collected an additional sales and use tax of one-fourth of one percent (1/4 of 1%) for its economic development as permitted under provision of Article 5190.6, Section 4A (now codified primarily in Chapter 504, Texas Local Government Code). Net collections on calendar year basis are as follows:

<u>Fiscal Year</u>	<u>Rate ⁽¹⁾</u>	<u>Total Collected</u>	<u>% of Ad Valorem Tax Levy</u>	<u>Equivalent of Ad Valorem Tax Rate</u>
2006	1 1/2%	\$4,479,517	110.78	\$0.47
2007	1 1/2%	4,857,969	107.29	0.50
2008	1 1/2%	5,155,539	101.87	0.46
2009	1 1/2%	5,022,478	89.40	0.41
2010	1 1/2%	5,278,917	86.16	0.41
2011	1 1/2%	5,281,333	84.60	0.39
2012	1 1/2%	6,533,697	96.56	0.47
2013	1 1/2%	6,918,184	99.23	0.49
2014	1 1/2%	6,909,704	97.32	0.50
2015	1 1/2%	7,214,240	98.39	0.52
2016	1 1/2%	7,389,899	96.56	0.50
2017	1 1/2%	7,434,928	82.72	0.44

Source: City of Seguin.

⁽¹⁾ 1.00% City sales tax; 0.25% to be used by the City to reduce property taxes; and 0.25% for Seguin Economic Development Corporation. The remaining 0.50% is collected by the Commissioners Court of Guadalupe County to reduce property taxes.

Top 10 Taxpayers and Their 2017 Valuations⁽¹⁾

<u>Name</u>	<u>Type of Property</u>	<u>2017 Net Assessed Valuation</u>	<u>Percent of Total 2017 Assessed Valuation</u>
Helmerich & Payne International	Contract Drilling	\$112,564,659	5.75%
Temic Automotive (Motorola)	Automotive Parts Manufacturing	72,162,503	3.68%
Niagara Bottling LLC	Bottled Water Supplier	40,930,143	2.09%
8th Street Properties	Bottled Water Manufacturing Plant	31,562,013	1.61%
Hexcel Reinforcements Corporation	Fiberglass Manufacturing	19,039,581	0.97%
Ameritex Pipe & Products LLC	Manufacturing	12,278,945	0.63%
MA Ranch at Seguin LLC	Land/Development	11,700,000	0.60%
ET Seguin Dist LLC	Caterpillar Plant	11,384,610	0.58%
Wonder Properties LTD	Apartment Complex	9,884,600	0.50%
Tyson Foods, Inc.	Poultry Processing	<u>9,358,155</u>	<u>0.48%</u>
Total		\$330,865,209	16.89% ⁽²⁾

Source: Guadalupe Appraisal District.

⁽¹⁾ The Rio Nogales Combined Cycle Natural Gas electric generation facility (previously a top ten taxpayer) was purchased in fiscal year 2012 by CPS Energy in San Antonio, Texas, a municipal-owned utility. As a result, the City and CPS Energy reached an agreement that paid the City \$9,585,200 to compensate for all future tax losses due to this electric generation power plant now being tax-exempt. The City also has abatement agreements with Caterpillar, Inc. that will end in 2019 and 2020. Based on current valuations, Caterpillar, Inc. would be the top taxpayer in the City when the values become fully taxable.

⁽²⁾ As shown in the table above, the top ten taxpayers in the City account for in excess of 16% of the City's tax base. Adverse developments in economic conditions, especially in a particular industry in which any one of these large taxpayers participates, could adversely impact these businesses and, consequently, the tax values in the City, resulting in less local tax revenue. If any major taxpayer, or a combination of top taxpayers, were to default in the payment of taxes, the ability of the City to make timely payment of debt service on the Bonds may be dependent on its ability to enforce and liquidate its tax lien, which is a time-consuming process that may only occur annually. See "THE CERTIFICATES - Defaults and Remedies" and "AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES - City's Rights in the Event of Tax Delinquencies" in this Official Statement.

Taxpayers by Classification

<u>Classification</u>	<u>2017 Assessed Valuation</u>	<u>Percent of Total</u>	<u>2016 Assessed Valuation</u>	<u>Percent of Total</u>	<u>2015 Assessed Valuation</u>	<u>Percent of Total</u>
Single Family Res.	\$1,032,346,116	39.97%	\$ 908,091,764	39.22%	\$ 828,598,813	39.61%
Multi-Family Res.	73,952,801	2.86%	62,007,727	2.68%	59,085,909	2.82%
Vacant Lot	31,077,425	1.20%	30,857,300	1.33%	30,211,194	1.44%
Qualified Ag. Land	106,083,965	4.11%	84,359,246	3.64%	95,963,471	4.59%
Non-qualified Ag. Land *	26,050,359	1.01%	23,614,424	1.02%	8,449,520	0.40%
Commercial Real Prop.	348,390,076	13.49%	297,059,823	12.83%	276,327,643	13.21%
Industrial Real Prop.	214,811,974	8.32%	197,265,825	8.52%	192,850,043	9.22%
Utilities	15,570,967	0.60%	14,640,986	0.63%	10,497,914	0.50%
Commercial Personal Prop.	153,927,817	5.96%	143,124,465	6.18%	136,085,754	6.51%
Industrial Personal Prop.	553,144,112	21.42%	526,494,814	22.74%	428,350,595	20.48%
Tangible Other Pers/Mobile Homes	5,845,719	0.23%	5,661,520	0.25%	5,821,727	0.28%
Residential Inventory	7,627,718	0.30%	9,046,187	0.39%	5,731,864	0.27%
Special Inventory	<u>13,907,228</u>	<u>0.54%</u>	<u>12,939,586</u>	<u>0.57%</u>	<u>13,775,515</u>	<u>0.66%</u>
Total Appraised Valuation	\$2,582,736,237	100.00%	\$2,315,163,667	100.00%	\$2,091,749,962	100.00%
Less Exemptions & Exclusions	<u>623,829,863</u>		<u>629,549,447</u>		<u>619,048,990</u>	
Net Taxable Assessed Valuation	<u>\$1,958,906,414</u>		<u>\$1,685,614,220</u>		<u>\$1,472,700,972</u>	

Source: Guadalupe Appraisal District.

* 2012 classification change. Improvement on Qualified Open Space (2013).

Direct and Estimated Gross Overlapping Funded Debt Payable from Ad Valorem Taxes

Expenditures of the various taxing bodies overlapping the territory of the City are paid out of ad valorem taxes levied by these taxing bodies on properties overlapping the City. These political taxing bodies are independent of the City and may incur borrowings to finance their expenditures. The following statement of direct and estimated overlapping ad valorem tax bonds was developed from information contained in the "Texas Municipal Reports" published by the Municipal Advisory Council of Texas. Except for the amounts relating to the City, the City has not independently verified the accuracy or completeness of such information, and no person should rely upon such information as being accurate or complete. Furthermore, certain of the entities listed below may have authorized or issued additional bonds since the date stated below, and such entities may have programs requiring the authorization and/or issuance of substantial amounts of additional bonds, the amount of which cannot be determined. The following table reflects the estimated share of direct and overlapping extended debt of these various taxing bodies:

Political Subdivision	Gross Debt		Percent Overlapping	Amount Overlapping
	Amount	As Of		
Seguin ISD	\$145,622,519	2-01-2018	48.80%	\$ 71,063,789
Guadalupe County	15,595,000	2-01-2018	19.46%	<u>3,034,787</u>
Total Net Overlapping Debt				74,098,576
Seguin, City of	\$90,129,000	2-01-2018	100.00%	<u>90,129,000</u>
Total Direct and Estimated Overlapping Debt				\$164,227,576
Ratio Total Direct and Estimated Overlapping Debt to 2017 Net Taxable Assessed Valuation				8.38%

ESTIMATED INTEREST & SINKING FUND MANAGEMENT INDEX 2017/18

Estimated Interest and Sinking Fund Balance at 9-30-2017	\$ 893,141
Estimated Income from \$0.2533 Collected Using 2017 Taxable	
Assessed Valuation of \$1,958,906,414 at 95% Collections	4,713,814
Estimated Other Revenue	<u>800,000</u>
Estimated Total Funds Available	6,406,955
2017/18 Net Debt Service Requirement	<u>5,599,917</u>
Estimated Interest and Sinking Fund Balance at 9-30-2018	\$ 807,038

CONSOLIDATED DEBT SERVICE REQUIREMENTS

FISCAL YEAR 30-SEPT	CURRENTLY OUTSTANDING DEBT SERVICE ⁽¹⁾	PLUS: THE CERTIFICATES AT ASSUMED RATES				GRAND TOTAL OF ALL DEBT SERVICE
		PRINCIPAL DUE 9/1	INTEREST DUE 3/1	INTEREST DUE 9/1	TOTAL	
2018	\$ 5,454,229.37			\$ 145,687.50	\$ 145,687.50	\$ 5,599,916.87
2019	5,489,884.75	\$ 200,000	\$ 145,687.50	145,687.50	491,375.00	5,981,259.75
2020	5,603,643.75	200,000	141,187.50	141,187.50	482,375.00	6,086,018.75
2021	5,643,258.38	200,000	136,687.50	136,687.50	473,375.00	6,116,633.38
2022	5,476,095.13	200,000	132,187.50	132,187.50	464,375.00	5,940,470.13
2023	5,508,057.38	200,000	127,687.50	127,687.50	455,375.00	5,963,432.38
2024	5,514,594.13	200,000	123,187.50	123,187.50	446,375.00	5,960,969.13
2025	5,442,812.50	200,000	118,687.50	118,687.50	437,375.00	5,880,187.50
2026	5,456,537.50	200,000	114,187.50	114,187.50	428,375.00	5,884,912.50
2027	5,455,050.00	210,000	109,687.50	109,687.50	429,375.00	5,884,425.00
2028	5,451,906.25	225,000	104,962.50	104,962.50	434,925.00	5,886,831.25
2029	5,454,006.25	235,000	99,900.00	99,900.00	434,800.00	5,888,806.25
2030	5,446,718.75	250,000	94,612.50	94,612.50	439,225.00	5,885,943.75
2031	5,448,068.75	250,000	88,987.50	88,987.50	427,975.00	5,876,043.75
2032	5,444,068.75	250,000	83,362.50	83,362.50	416,725.00	5,860,793.75
2033	5,447,793.75	250,000	77,737.50	77,737.50	405,475.00	5,853,268.75
2034	5,448,793.75	250,000	72,112.50	72,112.50	394,225.00	5,843,018.75
2035	5,112,218.75	500,000	66,487.50	66,487.50	632,975.00	5,745,193.75
2036	4,956,287.50	500,000	55,237.50	55,237.50	610,475.00	5,566,762.50
2037	4,357,500.00	500,000	43,987.50	43,987.50	587,975.00	4,945,475.00
2038		1,455,000	32,737.50	32,737.50	1,520,475.00	1,520,475.00
	<u>\$107,611,525.39</u>	<u>\$6,475,000</u>	<u>\$1,969,312.50</u>	<u>\$2,115,000.00</u>	<u>\$10,559,312.50</u>	<u>\$118,170,837.89</u>

⁽¹⁾ This is the currently outstanding general obligation debt service net of the self-supporting debt service supported by City's utility system revenues and the Seguin Economic Development Corporation sales tax revenues. Includes debt service on the City's Tax Notes, Series 2018.

ESTIMATED INTEREST & SINKING FUND MANAGEMENT INDEX 2018/19

Estimated Interest and Sinking Fund Balance at 9-30-2018	\$ 807,038
Estimated Income from \$0.2633 Collected Using Projected 2018 Estimated	
Taxable Assessed Valuation of \$2,037,262,671 at 95% Collections	5,095,906
Other Revenue (includes revenue for self-supporting debt)	<u>750,000</u>
Estimated Total Funds Available	6,652,944
Estimated 2018/19 Net Debt Service Requirement	<u>5,981,260</u>
Estimated Interest and Sinking Fund Balance at 9-30-2019	\$ 671,684

**COMPARATIVE CONDENSED STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES,
AND CHANGES IN GENERAL FUND BALANCE**

The following statements reflect the historical operations of the City. Such summary has been prepared for inclusion herein based upon information obtained from the City's audited financial statements and records. Reference is made to such statements for further and complete information.

	Fiscal Year Ended September 30				
	2017	2016	2015	2014	2012
REVENUES					
Taxes	\$12,678,017	\$12,182,731	\$11,377,976	\$10,676,386	\$10,521,558
Licenses and Permits	941,986	723,820	1,104,009	585,838	356,212
Intergovernmental	1,396,474	862,132	954,686	919,670	902,410
Charges for Services	5,711,530	5,696,651	5,635,600	5,556,445	5,170,549
Fines and Forfeits	1,707,497	1,497,809	1,728,156	1,717,511	1,282,300
Interest	144,635	64,240	10,728	13,533	23,808
Miscellaneous	<u>819,081</u>	<u>762,398</u>	<u>740,455</u>	<u>685,365</u>	<u>681,441</u>
Total Revenues	23,399,220	21,789,781	21,551,610	20,154,748	18,938,278
EXPENDITURES					
General Government	3,070,934	2,807,542	2,652,479	2,462,188	2,345,862
Public Safety	13,497,928	12,595,423	11,847,542	11,099,683	10,421,044
Public Service	7,191,996	7,075,027	6,523,397	6,087,470	5,553,915
Non-departmental	2,386,674	1,970,564	1,691,140	1,827,306	1,645,470
Indirect Cost Allocation (recovery)	(4,641,289)	(4,352,992)	(4,190,324)	(3,848,566)	(3,674,342)
Capital Projects/Outlay	<u>-0-</u>	<u>156,620</u>	<u>-0-</u>	<u>-0-</u>	<u>10,381</u>
Total Expenditures	22,435,704	20,254,184	18,524,234	17,628,081	16,302,330
Excess of Revenues Over (Under) Expenditures	963,516	1,535,597	3,027,376	2,526,667	2,635,948
Total Other Financing Sources (Uses)	<u>(2,948,073)</u>	<u>(4,367,865)</u>	<u>(4,031,458)</u>	<u>(3,479,302)</u>	<u>(2,441,296)</u>
Special Items	-0-	-0-	-0-	-0-	-0-
Excess (Deficiency) of Revenues and Other Sources Over (Under) Expenditures and Other Uses	(1,984,557)	(2,832,268)	(1,004,082)	(952,635)	194,652
Fund Balance at Beginning of Year	15,158,011	17,990,279	18,994,361	19,946,996	19,752,344
Prior Period Adjustments/Residual Equity Transfer	-0-	-0-	-0-	-0-	-0-
Fund Balance - September 30	\$13,173,454 ⁽¹⁾	\$15,158,011 ⁽¹⁾	\$17,990,279	\$18,994,361	\$19,946,996

Source: City's Comprehensive Annual Financial Reports.

⁽¹⁾ The decline in the General Fund balance is attributed partially to the planned annual drawdown of the funds received from CPS Energy related to the Rio Nogales Plant (see "TAXATION DATA - Top Ten Taxpayers and Their 2017 Valuations") and partially to fund one-time capital expenditures. The General Fund balance is still in excess of the City's General Fund balance policy requirement.

(this page intentionally left blank)

APPENDIX B

**GENERAL INFORMATION REGARDING
THE CITY OF SEGUIN AND ITS ECONOMY**

(this page intentionally left blank)

This Appendix contains a brief discussion of certain economic and demographic characteristics of the area in which the City is located. It does not constitute a part of this Official Statement. Information in this Appendix has been obtained from the sources noted. They are believed to be reliable, although no investigation has been made to verify the accuracy of such information. Much of the information was obtained from the *Texas Almanac*, Seguin Area Chamber of Commerce, and the City of Seguin and Guadalupe County *Texas Municipal Reports*.

Economic and Demographic Characteristics

The City of Seguin, Texas (the “City”) is located in South Central Texas and is the county seat and principal commercial center of Guadalupe County (the “County”). The City is located on Interstate Highway 10, about 35 miles east of San Antonio, 160 miles west of Houston, and 50 miles south of Austin, the State capital.

Incorporated in 1853, the City operates under a Home Rule Charter, which was adopted on December 7, 1971. The City has a council-manager type of government composed of the City Manager, Mayor and eight Councilpersons elected for four-year terms.

The Seguin-Guadalupe County economy is an important contribution to the San Antonio metropolitan area. Industry, agriculture and agribusiness, minerals, education, and recreation are major contributors.

Population

	<u>1970</u>	<u>1980</u>	<u>1990</u>	<u>2000</u>	<u>2010</u>	<u>Est. 2017</u>
City	15,934	17,854	18,853	22,011	25,175	29,241
County	33,354	46,700	64,874	89,023	131,533	151,249

Major Area Employers

The area has been economically stable for many years because of the industries located there. The major area employers, their products and approximate number of employees, as reported by the Texas Workforce Commission, Seguin Economic Development Corporation, and business entities, are given below:

<u>Name</u>	<u>Product</u>	<u>Number of Employees</u>
Continental Automotive Systems	Automotive Manufacturing	1,560
Caterpillar	Engine Assembly	1,250
Seguin Independent School District	Education	1,130
CMC Steel Texas	Steel Products Manufacturing	835
Tyson Foods, Inc.	Poultry Processing	745
Guadalupe Regional Medical Center	Healthcare	700
Guadalupe County	County Government	595
City of Seguin	City Government	350
HEB	Retail	340
Walmart Supercenter	Retail	300
Texas Lutheran University	Higher Education	<u>260</u>
Total		8,015

Many people commute to nearby San Antonio and Randolph Air Force Base for employment.

With the development of SH-130 providing an alternate route from the IH-35 gridlock, commercial traffic is diverted from just north of Austin to Seguin. This places Seguin as a very strategic location for distribution centers and manufacturers alike and will impact both retail and industrial market growths complimenting the already accelerated growth trend.

The Seguin Economic Development Corporation has announced that a large tract of land has been purchased by a developer for anticipated future development of mixed use to include multi-family, retail and industrial.

Labor Force Statistics - Guadalupe County

Annual Average	Annual Average					
	2016	2015	2014	2013	2012	2011
Civilian Labor Force	74,988	72,288	71,566	69,580	68,312	66,622
Total Employed	<u>72,296</u>	<u>69,720</u>	<u>68,501</u>	<u>65,654</u>	<u>64,294</u>	<u>62,147</u>
Total Unemployed	2,692	2,568	3,065	3,926	4,018	4,475
% Unemployed	3.6%	3.6%	4.3%	5.6%	5.9%	6.7%
% Unemployed (Texas)	4.6%	4.5%	5.1%	6.4%	6.8%	7.9%
% Unemployed (United States)	4.9%	5.3%	6.2%	7.4%	8.1%	8.9%

Source: Texas Workforce Commission -Economic Research and Analysis Department, and United States Department of Labor.

Employment and Wages by Industry - Guadalupe County

	Number of Employees			
	Second Quarter 2017	Fourth Quarter 2016	Fourth Quarter 2015	Fourth Quarter 2014
Natural Resources and Mining	242	234	345	479
Construction	2,483	2,316	2,236	1,990
Manufacturing	7,470	7,209	7,104	6,819
Trade, Transportation & Utilities	10,609	10,904	6,635	6,837
Information	196	211	226	209
Financial Activities	1,140	1,127	1,119	1,044
Professional and Business Services	2,943	2,695	2,483	1,981
Education and Health Services	3,369	3,346	3,242	3,244
Leisure and Hospitality	4,211	4,363	4,187	3,742
Other Services	1,135	1,031	1,063	1,132
Unclassified	35	23	12	7
Federal Government	224	225	211	200
State Government	166	169	159	174
Local Government	<u>6,151</u>	<u>6,123</u>	<u>5,981</u>	<u>5,878</u>
Total Employment	40,373	39,976	35,002	33,735
Total Wages	\$426,320,343	\$416,486,332	\$377,856,263	\$355,359,375

Source: Texas Workforce Commission - Texas Labor Market Information.

Agriculture

Guadalupe County agricultural income is derived from beef, dairy cattle, hogs, and poultry. Crops include sorghum, corn, wheat, oats, cotton, peanuts and pecans.

Minerals

Minerals produced include oil, gas, sand and gravel. A part of Guadalupe County lies in the Austin Chalk formation from which there is considerable oil production.

Transportation

In addition to Interstate Highway 10, highway facilities include State Highways 46 and 123, and U.S. Highways 90 and 90-A. Interstate 35 goes through the western portion of Guadalupe County.

Railroad facilities are provided by Union Pacific Railroad.

Commercial air service is available at the nearby San Antonio International Airport or Austin Bergstrom. Small and medium sized private aircraft may land at two airfields located within 12 miles of downtown Seguin.

Four local motor freight carriers serve Seguin from local depots. Four additional motor freight carriers serve Seguin from terminals in nearby San Antonio.

Educational Facilities

The Seguin Independent School District, accredited by the Texas Education Agency, is administered by a board comprised of elected citizens who serve in their respective positions without compensation. In addition to the basic curriculum prescribed by the state for grades K through 12, the District offers a wide range of electives. There are extensive special education and vocational education programs, as well as provisions for the accelerated students.

In addition, pre-school and day care centers are located throughout the City with religious and secular programs. Private and parochial schools, representing many teaching disciplines and religious affiliations, can also be found in the area. Baptist, Lutheran, Catholic and other Christian faiths provide pre-school and some elementary through high school programs. There is one Montessori program offered.

Texas Lutheran University ("TLU"), a fully accredited four-year co-educational senior liberal arts institution of higher learning, is located in Seguin. TLU's 1,400 students (50-50, male/female) come from 36 states and seven foreign countries. The 15:1 student-teacher ratio allows for small classes. TLU has been listed as one of the top ten small colleges in the southern United States by the U.S. News and World Report survey of college presidents for 15 out of 16 years. TLU is a central part of life in Seguin and the university pumps an estimated \$50 million into the Seguin economy annually.

The Central Texas Technology Center (the "CTTC") is a District Workforce Specialty Campus located minutes from downtown Seguin. The CTTC consists of a 25,000-square-foot facility. It is the area's first higher education facility dedicated to technology and it is a collaborative effort of the governing bodies and business development agencies of New Braunfels, Seguin and the Alamo Community College District (ACCD). The ACCD runs the programs, and classes provide college level education and training to residents of Comal, Guadalupe, Hays, Bexar and Wilson counties. An expansion project is currently underway to double the size of the facility.

Other educational facilities nearby include: Texas State University at San Marcos; University of Texas at Austin; and the San Antonio institutions of San Antonio College, Trinity University, St. Mary's University, University of Texas at San Antonio, The University of the Incarnate Word, Our Lady of the Lake University, and the University of Texas Health Science Center composed of schools of Dentistry, Nursing, Allied Health Sciences and graduate school of Biomedical Sciences.

Recreation

The Guadalupe River meanders through Guadalupe County and the City of Seguin in a northwest to southeast direction. Canyon Lake dam and reservoir are located in adjoining Comal County about thirty miles upstream from the City of Seguin and this impoundment usually assures the normal flow of the river and provides a variety of water sports including canoeing, tube floating and fishing in a very scenic setting. Other impoundments include Lake Placid, Lake McQueeney and Lake Dunlap, all of which provide boating, fishing and skiing.

Max Starke Park, owned by the City of Seguin, is a 160-acre park, which provides an 18-hole golf course, wave pool, tennis courts, baseball fields, and a large picnic area.

Seguin is also home to ZDT's Amusement Park. It is a family oriented amusement park with 11 attractions. The park draws numerous visitors to the area.

Community Services

Many cultural events are held at the Seguin-Guadalupe City Coliseum. The Jackson Auditorium at Texas Lutheran College, home of the Mid-Texas Symphony, hosts nationally and internationally renowned acts in music, theatre, and dance, as well as distinguished lecturers.

The One Seguin Art Center has brought area and out-of-town artistic activities to Seguin.

"Teatro de Artes de Juan Seguin" has brought area and out-of-town Mexican American artists through the annual events of Fiestas Patrias and Noche De Gala.

The Seguin-Guadalupe County Public Library offers a variety of programs for both children and adults. A major library expansion has resulted in enlargement of facilities from approximately 2,900 square feet to 9,600 square feet and an increase in the book collection from 38,000 to 68,000 volumes.

The City is served by two local daily newspapers. San Antonio and Austin daily newspapers are also available. Two radio stations, four commercial television stations and cable television serve the Seguin area.

Churches representing most religious denominations are available. Those not represented generally are available in nearby San Antonio.

Guadalupe Regional Medical Center, with an annual budget of \$119 million, serves the area. The hospital currently has 107 acute care beds and 12 inpatient rehabilitation beds and has a staff of approximately 60 doctors. The hospital also provides Home Health and Hospice care. The Wellness Center provides an exercise facility for the community, outpatient physical therapy, and physician offices for new doctors. The Teddy Buerger Center is an outpatient psychiatric and substance abuse center. In addition to the hospital, several clinics are available in Seguin. Numerous hospitals and clinics are available in nearby San Antonio.

Financial

Commercial banks located in Seguin include First Commercial Bank, N.A., Bank of America, First American Bank of Texas, Wells Fargo, Prosperity Bank, Broadway National Bank, and Randolph-Brooks Federal Credit Union, Schertz Bank & Trust, and The First National Bank.

Growth Indices

<u>Fiscal Year</u>	<u>City Building Permits Number Issued</u>	<u>Amount</u>	<u>City Sales Tax</u>	<u>Seguin ISD Enrollment</u>
2007	1,026	\$31,990,888	\$4,857,969	7,326
2008	861	97,944,325	5,155,539	7,501
2009	694	35,680,585	5,022,478	7,559
2010	886	32,981,097	5,278,917	7,548
2011	756	27,276,413	5,281,333	7,548
2012	765	39,261,603	6,533,697	7,440
2013	906	45,228,136	6,918,184	7,514
2014	903	65,393,557	6,909,704	7,419
2015	1,093	82,433,635	7,214,240	7,459
2016	967	91,438,004	7,389,899	7,492

Source: *City of Seguin and Seguin ISD.*

APPENDIX C

**EXCERPTS FROM THE CITY OF SEGUIN
AUDITED FINANCIAL STATEMENT
FOR THE YEAR ENDED
SEPTEMBER 30, 2017**

(this page intentionally left blank)



Government Finance Officers Association

**Certificate of
Achievement
for Excellence
in Financial
Reporting**

Presented to

**City of Seguin
Texas**

For its Comprehensive Annual
Financial Report
for the Fiscal Year Ended

September 30, 2016

Christopher P. Merrill

Executive Director/CEO

CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS

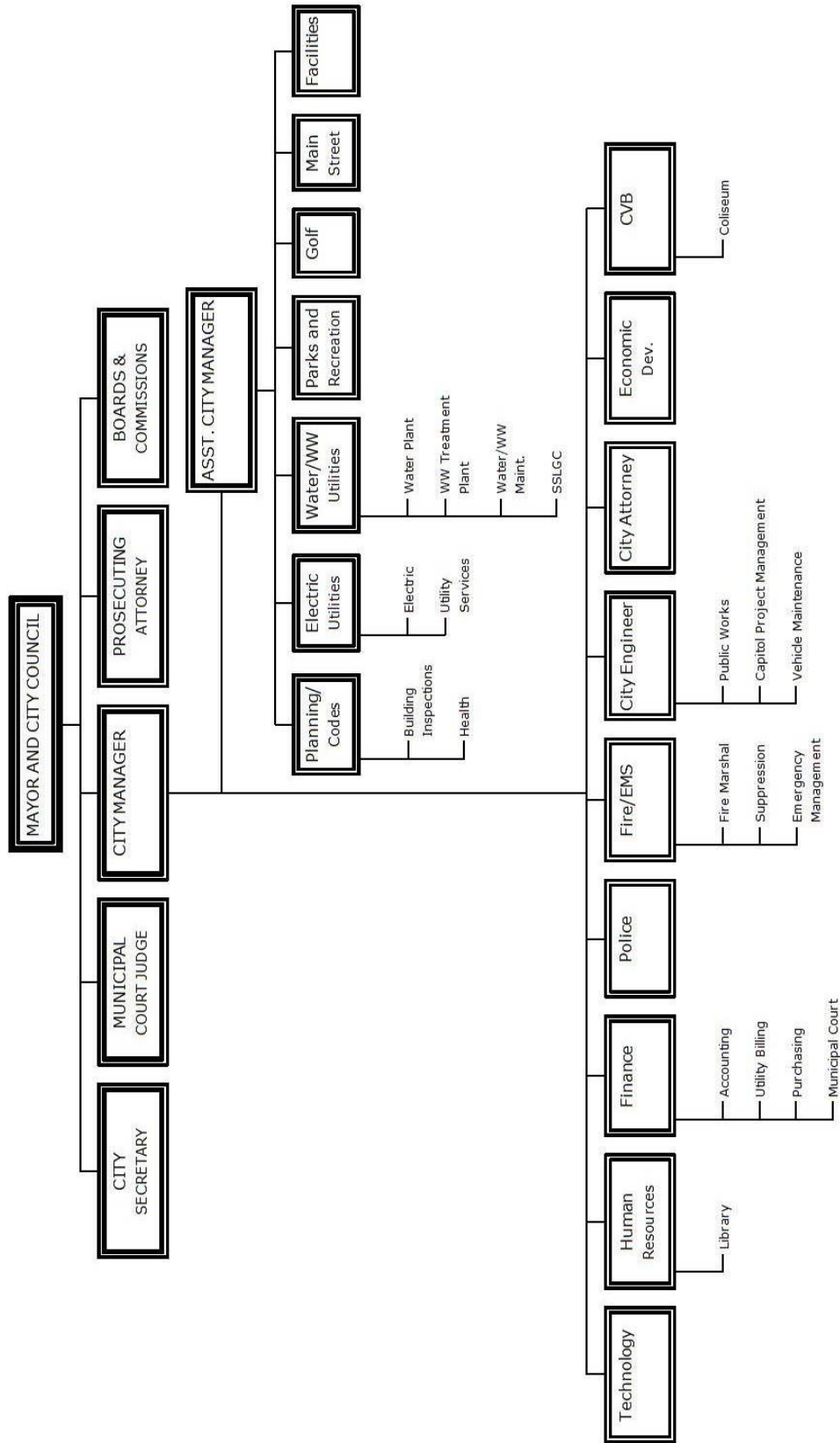
PRINCIPAL OFFICERS

DON KEIL Mayor
ERNESTO M. LEAL..... Mayor Pro-Tem
JEANETTE CRABB Councilwoman
DONNA DODGEN..... Councilwoman
MARK HERBOLD. Councilman
FONDA MATHIS..... Councilwoman
CARLOS MEDRANO Councilman
CHRIS RANGEL Councilman

DOUG FASELER
City Manager

RICK CORTES..... Assistant City Manager
NAOMI MANSKI..... City Secretary
SUSAN CADDELL Director of Finance
ANDREW QUITTNER..... City Attorney

CITY OF SEGUIN





INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

The Honorable Mayor and
Members of the City Council
City of Seguin, Texas

Report on the Financial Statements

We have audited the accompanying financial statements of the governmental activities, the business-type activities, the discretely presented component unit, each major fund, and the aggregate remaining fund information of the City of Seguin, Texas, as of and for the year ended September 30, 2017, and the related notes to the financial statements, which collectively comprise the City's basic financial statements as listed in the table of contents.

Management's Responsibility for the Financial Statements

The City of Seguin, Texas' management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of these financial statements in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America; this includes the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

Auditor's Responsibility

Our responsibility is to express opinions on these financial statements based on our audit. We conducted our audit in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America and the standards applicable to financial audits contained in *Government Auditing Standards*, issued by the Comptroller General of the United States. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free from material misstatement. The financial statements of the Seguin Economic Development Corporation (component unit) were not audited in accordance with *Government Auditing Standards*.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. The procedures selected depend on the auditor's judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control. Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of significant accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements.

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our audit opinions.

Opinions

In our opinion, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the respective financial position of the governmental activities, the business-type activities, the discretely presented component unit, each major fund, and the aggregate remaining fund information of the City of Seguin, Texas, as of September 30, 2017, and the respective changes in financial position and, where applicable, cash flows thereof for the year then ended in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

Other Matters

Required Supplementary Information

Accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America require that management's discussion and analysis, budgetary comparison information, schedules of changes and city contributions – defined benefit plan, and other postemployment benefit, as listed in the table of contents, be presented to supplement the basic financial statements. Such information, although not a part of the basic financial statements, is required by the Governmental Accounting Standards Board who considers it to be an essential part of financial reporting for placing the basic financial statements in an appropriate operational, economic, or historical context. We have applied certain limited procedures to the required supplementary information in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America, which consisted of inquiries of management about the methods of preparing the information and comparing the information for consistency with management's responses to our inquiries, the basic financial statements, and other knowledge we obtained during our audit of the basic financial statements. We do not express an opinion or provide any assurance on management's discussion and analysis, budgetary comparison information and schedules of funding progress because the limited procedures do not provide us with sufficient evidence to express an opinion or provide any assurance.

Other Information

Our audit was conducted for the purpose of forming opinions on the financial statements that collectively comprise the City of Seguin, Texas' basic financial statements as a whole. The comparative statements, combining and individual nonmajor fund financial statements, introductory section, and statistical section are presented for purposes of additional analysis and are not a required part of the basic financial statements.

The comparative financial statements and combining and individual nonmajor fund financial statements are the responsibility of management and were derived from and relate directly to the underlying accounting and other records used to prepare the basic financial statements. Such information has been subjected to the auditing procedures applied in the audit of the basic financial statements and certain additional procedures, including comparing and reconciling such information directly to the underlying accounting and other records used to prepare the basic financial statements or to the basic financial statements themselves, and other additional procedures in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. In our opinion, the combining and individual nonmajor fund financial statements are fairly stated in all material respects, in relation to the basic financial statements as a whole.

The introductory and statistical sections have not been subjected to the auditing procedures applied in the audit of the basic financial statements, and accordingly, we do not express an opinion or provide any assurance on it.

Other Reporting Required by *Government Auditing Standards*

In accordance with *Government Auditing Standards*, we have also issued our report dated February 15, 2018 on our consideration of the City of Seguin, Texas' internal control over financial reporting and on our tests of its compliance with certain provisions of laws, regulations, contracts, and grant agreements and other matters. The purpose of that report is to describe the scope of our testing of internal control over financial reporting and compliance and the results of that testing, and not to provide an opinion on internal control over financial reporting or on compliance. That report is an integral part of an audit performed in accordance with *Government Auditing Standards* in considering the City of Seguin, Texas' internal control over financial reporting and compliance.



Armstrong, Vaughan & Associates, P.C.

February 15, 2018

MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS

As management of the City of Seguin, we offer readers of the City of Seguin's financial statements this narrative overview and analysis of the financial activities for the City of Seguin for the fiscal year ended September 30, 2017. We encourage readers to consider the information presented here in conjunction with additional information that we have furnished in our letter of transmittal, which can be found in the introductory section of this report, and the City's financial statements immediately following this analysis.

FINANCIAL HIGHLIGHTS

- The assets and deferred outflows of resources of the City of Seguin exceeded its liabilities at the close of the fiscal year ending September 30, 2017, by \$108,497,153 (net position). Of this amount, \$23,124,152 (unrestricted net position) may be used to meet the government's ongoing obligations to citizens and creditors.
- The City's total net position increased by \$6,893,616 or 6.78% compared to the prior fiscal year.
- As of September 30, 2017 the City of Seguin's governmental funds reported combined ending fund balances of \$36,338,201, an increase of \$1,540,427.
- At the end of the current fiscal year, unassigned fund balance for the General Fund was \$11,505,167, or 51.3% of total General Fund expenses.
- The City's total debt increased by \$14,580,904 during the current fiscal year. The City issued Certificates of Obligation Bonds for \$8,800,000 and Utility Revenue Bonds for \$8,415,000.
- During the year, the City's expenses were \$406,480 less than the \$32,610,010 generated in taxes and other revenues for governmental activities before transfers.
- The total cost of the City's governmental activity programs increased by \$2,138,230 from last year, and no new programs were added this year. Salaries and benefits increased from fiscal year 2016. In addition, depreciation increased due to several projects being completed in fiscal years 2017 and 2016.

OVERVIEW OF THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

The discussion and analysis serves as an introduction to the City of Seguin's basic financial statements. The City of Seguin's basic financial statements are comprised of three components: 1) government-wide financial statements, 2) fund financial statements, and 3) notes to the financial statements. The comprehensive annual financial report (CAFR) also contains other supplementary information in addition to the basic statements themselves.

Government-wide financial statements. The *government-wide financial statements* are designed to provide readers with a broad overview of the City of Seguin's finances, in a manner similar to a private-sector business

The *statement of net position* presents information on all of the City of Seguin's assets and liabilities, with the difference between the two reported as *net position*. Over time, increases or decreases in net position may serve as a useful indicator of whether the financial position of the City of Seguin is improving or deteriorating.

The *statement of activities* presents information showing how the City's net position changed during the most recent fiscal year. All changes in net position are reported as soon as the underlying event giving rise to the change occurs, regardless of the timing of related cash flows. Thus, revenues and expenses are reported in this statement for some items that will only result in cash flows in future fiscal periods (e.g., uncollected taxes and earned but not used vacation leave).

In the *statement of net position* and the *statement of activities*, the City's operations are divided into two kinds of activities:

- 1 Governmental Activities – Most of the City's basic services are reported here, such as public safety, public works and general administration. Property taxes, franchise fees and charges for services finance most of these activities.
- 2 Business-Type Activities – The City charges a fee to customers to help cover all or most of the cost of certain services it provides. The City's Utility Fund, which include, electric, water and wastewater services, are reported here.

In addition, the *government-wide financial statements* include not only the City of Seguin itself, but also the Seguin Economic Development Corporation, a legally separate component unit for which the City is financially accountable. Financial information for this component unit is reported separately from the primary government and business-type activities.

The *government-wide financial statements* can be found on pages 16 - 19 of this report.

Fund financial statements. A *fund* is a grouping of related accounts that is used to maintain control over resources that have been segregated for specific activities or objectives. The City of Seguin, like other state and local governments, uses fund accounting to ensure and demonstrate compliance with finance-related legal requirements. The fund financial statements provide detailed information about the most significant funds – not the City as a whole. Some funds are required to be established by state law and by bond covenants. However, the City establishes many other funds to help it control and manage money for particular purposes or to show that it is meeting legal responsibilities for using certain taxes, grants and other money. All of the funds of the City can be divided into three categories: governmental funds, proprietary funds, and fiduciary funds.

Governmental funds. Governmental funds are used to account for essentially the same functions reported as governmental activities in the government-wide financial statements. However, unlike the government-wide financial statements, governmental fund financial statements focus on near-term inflows and outflows of spendable resources, as well as balances of spendable resources available at the end of the fiscal year. Governmental funds statements are reported using current financial resources measurement focus and the modified accrual basis of accounting.

Because the focus of governmental funds is narrower than that of the government-wide financial statements, it is useful to compare the information presented for governmental funds with similar information presented for governmental activities in the government-wide financial statements. By doing so, readers may better understand the long-term impact of the government's near-term financing decisions. The relationships or differences between governmental activities (reported in the *statement of net position* and the *statement of activities*) and governmental funds are detailed in a reconciliation following the fund financial statements.

Information is presented separately in the governmental funds balance sheet and in the governmental funds statement of revenues, expenditures, and changes in fund balances for the General Fund, 2016 Certificates of Obligation Fund, 2016-a Certificates of Obligation Fund and Debt Service Fund, all of which are considered to

be major funds. Data from the other governmental funds are combined into a single, aggregated nonmajor fund presentation. Individual fund data for each of these nonmajor governmental funds is provided in the form of combining statements elsewhere in the CAFR.

The basic governmental fund financial statements can be found on pages 20 - 25.

Proprietary funds. The City charges customers for certain services it provides. These services are generally reported in proprietary funds. Proprietary funds are reported in the same way that all activities are reported in the *statement of net position* and the *statement of activities*.

The City maintains two different types of proprietary funds. The Utility Fund is a business-type activity and consists of revenues from charges for electric, water and wastewater sales. The Internal Service Funds account for revenues and expenditures for the employee health insurance, retiree health insurance and workers' compensation insurance. The fund financial statements provide the same type of information as the government-wide financial statements, only in more detail.

The proprietary funds financial statements can be found on pages 26 - 30 of this report.

Fiduciary funds. Fiduciary funds are used to account for resources held for the benefit of parties outside of the government. Fiduciary funds are not reflected in the government-wide financial statements because the resources of those funds are not available to support the City of Seguin's own programs. The method of accounting utilized for these funds is similar in nature to that of the proprietary funds.

The basic fiduciary fund financial statements can be found on pages 31 - 32 of this report.

Notes to the Financial Statements. The notes provide additional information that is essential to a full understanding of the data provided in the government-wide and fund financial statements. The notes to the financial statements can be found on pages 33 - 68 of this report.

Other information. In addition to the basic financial statements and accompanying notes, this report also presents certain required supplementary information concerning the City's general fund budgetary schedule. The City of Seguin adopts an annual appropriated budget for its general fund. A budgetary comparison schedule has been provided for the general fund to demonstrate compliance with this budget. Required supplementary information can be found on pages 69 - 74 of this report.

In addition, this report also contains certain required supplementary information concerning the City of Seguin's progress in funding its obligation to provide pension benefits to City staff and members of the City's firemen's pension fund, as well as funding progress for other postemployment benefits (health insurance) provided to retirees.

The combining statements referred to earlier in connection with nonmajor governmental and enterprise funds and individual internal service funds are presented immediately following the required supplementary information described in the preceding paragraph. Combining and individual fund statements can be found on pages 80 - 120 of this report.

GOVERNMENT-WIDE FINANCIAL ANALYSIS

As noted earlier, net position may serve over time as a useful indicator of a government's financial position. As of September 30, 2017, the City of Seguin's assets and deferred outflows of resources exceeded liabilities by \$108,497,153. Table A-1 is a condensed version of the City's statement of net position for the years ended September 30, 2017 and 2016, respectively.

The largest portion of the City's total net position (73.4%) is its net investment in capital assets (e.g., land, buildings, machinery, and equipment); less any related debt used to acquire those assets that is still outstanding. The City of Seguin uses these capital assets to provide services to citizens; consequently, these assets are not available for future spending. Although the City's investment in its capital assets is reported net of related debt, it should be noted that the resources needed to repay this debt must be provided from other sources, since the capital assets themselves cannot be used to liquidate these liabilities. The next largest portion of the City's total net position (21.3%) is its unrestricted net position.

Table A-1
City of Seguin's Net Position

	Governmental Activities		Business-Type Activities		Total	
	2017	2016	2017	2016	2017	2016
Assets						
Current assets	\$ 27,017,724	\$ 27,960,258	\$ 37,207,003	\$ 34,338,715	\$ 64,224,727	\$ 62,298,973
Capital assets	91,443,641	83,096,731	90,354,183	77,555,421	181,797,824	160,652,152
Other non current assets	15,653,893	13,057,073	14,459,337	17,054,811	30,113,230	30,111,884
Total assets	<u>134,115,258</u>	<u>124,114,062</u>	<u>142,020,523</u>	<u>128,948,947</u>	<u>276,135,781</u>	<u>253,063,009</u>
Deferred Outflows of Resources	<u>5,132,092</u>	<u>5,688,983</u>	<u>1,741,400</u>	<u>1,933,690</u>	<u>6,873,492</u>	<u>7,622,673</u>
Liabilities						
Current liabilities	3,937,776	3,821,156	5,222,032	6,396,858	9,159,808	10,218,014
Noncurrent liabilities	105,153,206	96,313,724	60,199,106	52,550,407	165,352,312	148,864,131
Total liabilities	<u>109,090,982</u>	<u>100,134,880</u>	<u>65,421,138</u>	<u>58,947,265</u>	<u>174,512,120</u>	<u>159,082,145</u>
Net Position						
Invested in Capital Assets	30,491,009	28,065,213	49,099,409	44,783,121	79,590,418	72,848,334
Restricted	2,806,714	2,912,376	2,975,869	2,713,233	5,782,583	5,625,609
Unrestricted	(3,141,355)	(1,309,424)	26,265,507	24,439,016	23,124,152	23,129,592
Total Net Position	<u>\$ 30,156,368</u>	<u>\$ 29,668,165</u>	<u>\$ 78,340,785</u>	<u>\$ 71,935,370</u>	<u>\$ 108,497,153</u>	<u>\$ 101,603,535</u>

An additional portion of the City of Seguin's net position (5.3%) is subject to external restrictions, including bond covenants, on how they must be used. The remaining balance of unrestricted net position of \$23,124,152 may be used to meet the government's ongoing obligations to citizens and creditors.

Changes in Net position. The City's total government-wide revenues increased by \$9,177,920 or 12.1%. This was largely due to increase in electric, water and sewer revenue along with an increase in property tax revenues and an increase in the developer contributions. The City's total government-wide expenses increased by \$5,633,784 or 7.8%. There was a large increase in wholesale power costs, along with an increase in salaries and benefits and depreciation.

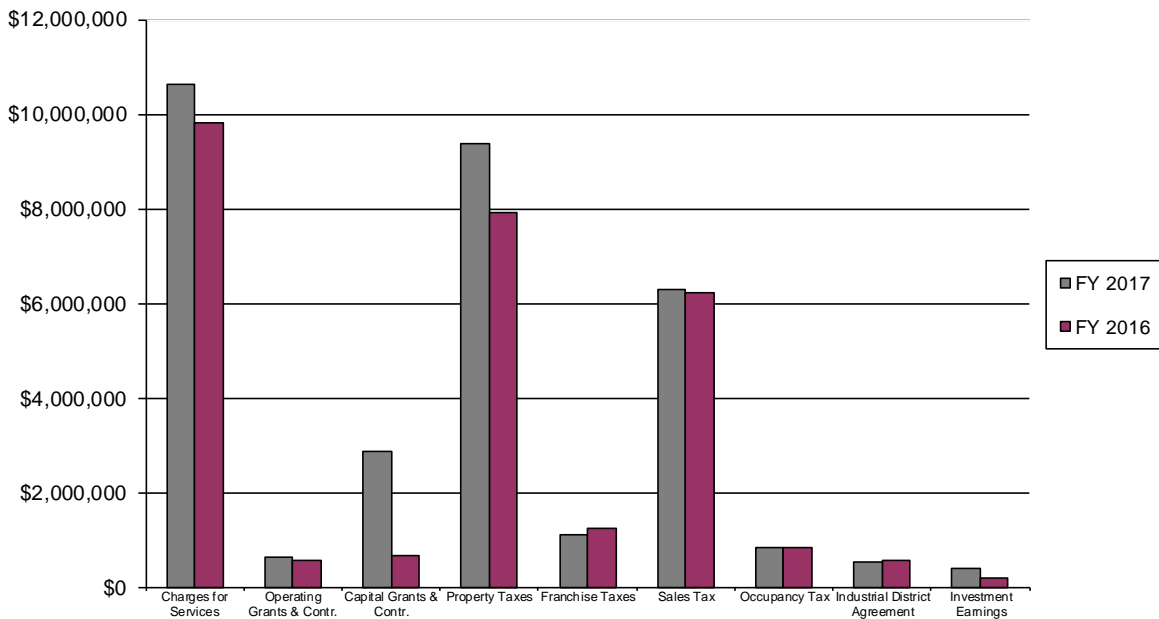
Table A-2
Changes in City of Seguin's Net Position

	Governmental Activities		Business-Type Activities		Total	
	2017	2016	2017	2016	2017	2016
Program Revenues:						
Charges for Services	\$ 10,619,004	\$ 9,797,695	\$ 49,979,572	\$ 46,502,423	\$ 60,598,576	\$ 56,300,118
Operating Grants and Contributions	618,406	546,156	-	-	618,406	546,156
Capital Grants and Contributions	2,868,007	656,203	1,845,532	975,222	4,713,539	1,631,425
General Revenues						
Property Taxes	9,362,955	7,922,023	-	-	9,362,955	7,922,023
Franchise Taxes	1,096,104	1,252,005	-	-	1,096,104	1,252,005
Sales Tax	6,271,333	6,232,146	-	-	6,271,333	6,232,146
Occupancy Tax	842,217	830,356	-	-	842,217	830,356
Industrial District Agreement	531,294	546,645	-	-	531,294	546,645
Investment Earnings	400,790	183,931	389,947	191,923	790,737	375,854
Gain (Loss) on Sale of Assets	-	-	3,601	14,112	3,601	14,112
Total Revenues:	32,610,110	27,967,160	52,218,652	47,683,680	84,828,762	75,650,840
Expenses:						
General Government	4,116,593	3,147,664	-	-	4,116,593	3,147,664
Public Safety	15,578,523	14,279,914	-	-	15,578,523	14,279,914
Public Service	9,644,071	10,077,096	-	-	9,644,071	10,077,096
Interest on Long-Term Debt	2,864,443	2,560,726	-	-	2,864,443	2,560,726
Utility	-	-	45,731,516	42,235,962	45,731,516	42,235,962
Total Expenses	32,203,630	30,065,400	45,731,516	42,235,962	77,935,146	72,301,362
Excess (Deficiency) Before Transfers In (Out)	406,480 81,723	(2,098,240) (80,406)	6,487,136 (81,723)	5,447,718 80,406	6,893,616 -	3,349,478 -
Increase (Decrease) in Net Position	\$ 488,203	\$ (2,178,646)	\$ 6,405,413	\$ 5,528,124	\$ 6,893,616	\$ 3,349,478

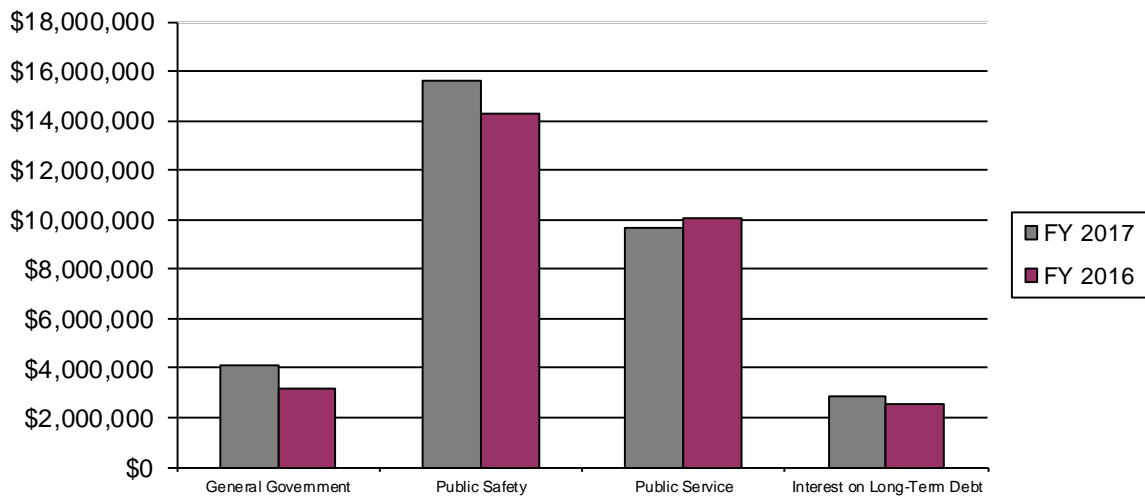
Governmental activities. The City's total governmental revenues increased by \$4,642,950 or 16.6% above last year. The City's total governmental expenses increased by \$2,138,230 or 7.1% above last year.

- Capital Grants and Contributions increased by 2,211,804. Of this amount, \$2,093,513 was from developer contributions.
- Property Taxes increased by \$1,440,932 or 18.19%. Property values increased along with an increase in debt service payments. This was the first full year the debt service payments were made for the 2016 General Obligation Bonds.
- Interest and Investment Earnings increased by \$216,859. An increase in interest rates along with investments in higher yield investments occurred in BY17.
- Building Permits increased by \$213,618 or 38.9%. Housing developments have been rapidly occurring in the City.
- The most significant governmental expense for the City was in providing for public safety, which incurred expenses of \$15,578,523. These expenses increased by \$880,456. These expenses are offset by revenues collected from a variety of sources, with the largest being from fines and penalties in the amount of \$1,691,314. Additional funding also included EMS revenue in the amount of \$1,031,905 and Fire and EMS interlocal agreements with Guadalupe County in the amount of \$588,874. The major components of public safety are police and fire. Police accounted for \$7.1 million in public safety expense while Fire accounted for \$5.6 million in public safety expense.

Revenues - Governmental Activities



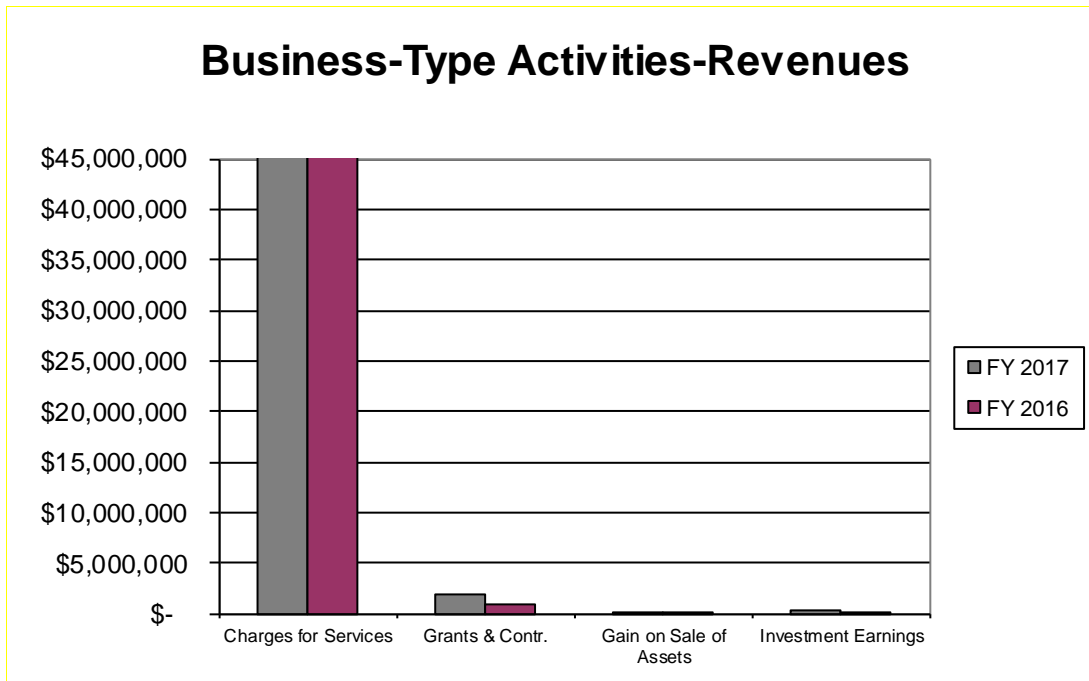
Expenses - Governmental Activities



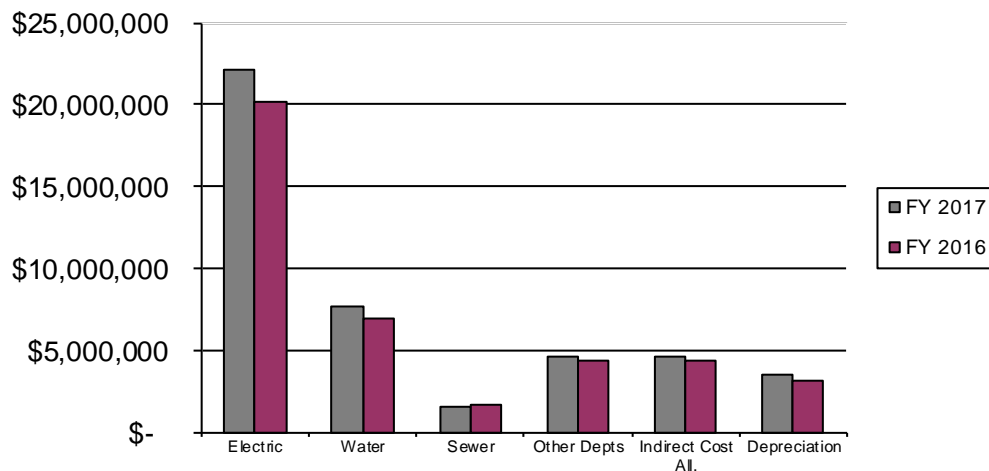
Business-type activities. The City’s total business-type revenues increased by \$4,534,972 or 9.5%. The City’s total business-type expenses increased by \$3,495,554 or 8.3%.

- Electric revenues make up \$30.2 million of the charges for services. This year electric revenues increased by \$2,116,864. The increase was due to an increase in consumption. Wholesale power costs increased by \$1,985,834 or 12.19%.
- Water revenues make up \$10.4 million of the charges for services. This year water revenues increased by \$574,353 or 5.9%. This was a result of an increase in consumption along with an increase in rates. The City purchases water from the Schertz-Seguin Local Government Corporation (SSLGC).

- Sewer revenues make up \$7.3 million of the charges for services. This year sewer revenues increased by \$537,735 or 8%. This was due to an increase in water consumption along with an increase in rates.



Business-Type Activities-Expenses



FINANCIAL ANALYSIS OF THE GOVERNMENT'S FUNDS

As noted earlier, the City of Seguin uses fund accounting to ensure and demonstrate compliance with finance-related legal requirements.

Governmental funds. The focus of the City's governmental funds is to provide information on near-term inflows, outflows, and balances of spendable resources. Such information is useful in assessing the City of Seguin's financing requirements. In particular, unassigned fund balance may serve as a useful measure of a government's net resources available for spending at the end of the fiscal year.

At the end of the current fiscal year, the City's governmental funds reported combined ending fund balances of \$36,338,201. This is an increase of \$1,540,427. The City continues to spend down bond proceeds received in previous fiscal years. In addition, the City suffered some damage in August 2017 as a result of Hurricane Harvey. Funds from the Stabilization Agreement Fund were used to provide the funding for recovery efforts. Once the City receives insurance proceeds and FEMA assistance proceeds, this fund will be replenished. Of this total amount of fund balance, \$11,505,167 constitutes unassigned fund balance, which is available for spending at the government's discretion. The remainder of fund balances is as follows: 1) nonspendable fund balance in the amount of \$164,164 which are prepaids and inventory, 2) restricted fund balance in the amount of \$18,151,691, which are restricted to tourism and economic development, public safety, public service, capital projects or debt service, 3) committed fund balance in the amount of \$1,750,289, which is committed to stabilization agreement and aquatic fees, and 4) assigned fund balance in the amount of \$4,766,892, which is assigned to capital projects.

The General Fund is the main operating fund of the City of Seguin. At the end of the current fiscal year, unassigned fund balance of the General Fund was \$11,505,167, while total fund balance reached \$13,173,454. Of this amount \$2,447,738 is attributable to the balance of a tax exemption settlement agreement. As a measure of the General Fund's liquidity, it may be useful to compare both unassigned fund balance and total fund balance to total fund expenditures. With the \$2,447,738 taken out of the equation, unassigned fund balance represents 40.4% of general fund expenditures, while total fund balance represents 47.8 of that same amount.

The General Fund Capital Projects Fund has a total fund balance of \$4,483,029, a decrease of \$250,163. This decrease can be attributable to the fact that funds are being used to complete projects.

At the end of FY17, six bond funds had a total fund balance of \$15,113,641. This was an increase of \$3,497,460 due to receiving bond proceeds of \$8,800,000 while continuing to spend down bond proceeds from previous years.

Other factors concerning the finances of governmental fund have already been addressed in the discussion of the City's governmental activities in the government-wide financial statements.

Proprietary funds. The City of Seguin's proprietary funds are utilized to account for operations of the City that are commercial in nature and accounted for in a manner more similar to private enterprise. The statements for proprietary funds provide the same type of information found in the government-wide financial statements, but in more detail.

Unrestricted net position of the Utility Fund at the end of the year amounted to \$26,265,507. The restricted net position for debt service is \$520,794, while restricted net position for impact fees is \$2,455,075. Net position invested in capital assets amounted to \$49,099,409.

GENERAL FUND BUDGETARY HIGHLIGHTS

For FY 2016-17, actual revenues on a budgetary basis were \$23,399,220 compared to the final budget of \$22,292,674, which is \$1,106,546 above budget. Building permits exceeded budget by \$263,303 due to increased construction activity. Property tax exceeded budget by \$292,138 due to an increase in values.

For FY 2016-17, actual expenditures on a budgetary basis were \$22,435,704 compared to the final budget of \$23,809,775, which was \$1,374,071 below final budget amounts. Some departments had employee turnover resulting in their personnel services being under budget and savings on other operating expenditures. Indirect cost allocation also exceeded budget by \$241,289.

CAPITAL ASSETS AND DEBT ADMINISTRATION

Capital Assets. At the end of 2017, the City had invested \$181,797,824, net of depreciation, in a broad range of capital assets, including land, equipment, buildings, and vehicles. (See Table A-3.) This amount represents a net increase (including additions and deductions) of \$17,979,138 or 11%. The increase was due in part to large bond projects being completed or underway begun during fiscal year 2017. More detailed information about the City's capital assets can be found in Note G, page 47 – 48.

Table A-3
City of Seguin's Capital Assets

	Governmental		Business-Type		Total		Total
	Activities		Activities				Percentage
	2017	2016	2017	2016	2017	2016	Change
							2016 - 2017
Land	\$ 4,584,815	\$ 4,467,991	\$ 727,026	\$ 727,026	\$ 5,311,841	\$ 5,195,017	2.2%
Buildings and Improvements	37,836,176	33,889,397	35,938,858	24,672,813	73,775,034	58,562,210	26.0%
Improvements Other than Buildings	64,790,507	56,208,316	89,868,569	69,105,147	154,659,076	125,313,463	23.4%
Transportation and Equipment	17,875,883	15,063,342	8,060,934	7,755,774	25,936,817	22,819,116	13.7%
Construction in Progress	16,352,771	19,981,296	18,028,664	34,102,978	34,381,435	54,084,274	-36.4%
Totals at Historical Cost	141,440,152	129,610,342	152,624,051	136,363,738	294,064,203	265,974,080	10.6%
Total Accumulated Depreciation	(49,996,511)	(46,513,609)	(62,269,868)	(55,641,785)	(112,266,379)	(102,155,394)	9.9%
Net Capital Assets	\$ 91,443,641	\$ 83,096,733	\$ 90,354,183	\$ 80,721,953	\$ 181,797,824	\$ 163,818,686	11.0%

Long-term debt. At year-end, the City had \$125,933,417 in bonds, loans and capital leases outstanding as shown in Table A-4. This was an increase of \$14,580,904 or 13.1% from 2016. This fiscal year, the City Certificates of Obligation in the amount of \$8,800,000 and issued Utility Revenue Bonds in the amount of \$8,415,000. More detailed information about the City's debt is presented in Notes H and I, pages 49 – 53.

The City's tax-supported debt rating by Fitch is AA with a stable outlook while Standard and Poor rating is AA- with a positive outlook (updated to AA stable as of January 2018). The City's utility system revenue bonds' rating by Fitch is A+ with a positive outlook while Standard and Poor rating is A+ with a stable outlook. The current ratio of net tax-supported debt to assessed value of all taxable property is 4.2%. The pledged revenue coverage for the utility system revenue bonds is 2.98.

Table A-4
City of Seguin's Long-Term Debt

	Governmental		Business-Type		Total		Total
	Activities		Activities				Percentage
	2017	2016	2017	2016	2017	2016	Change
							2016-2017
Bonds Payable	\$ 39,590,288	\$ 41,464,030	\$ 49,699,711	\$ 42,755,970	\$ 89,289,999	\$ 84,220,000	6.0%
Certificates of Obligation	35,090,000	26,970,000	-	-	35,090,000	26,970,000	30.1%
Capital Leases	1,517,298	126,393	36,120	36,120	1,553,418	162,513	855.9%
Total Bonds & Notes Payable	\$ 76,197,586	\$ 68,560,423	\$ 49,735,831	\$ 42,792,090	\$ 125,933,417	\$ 111,352,513	13.1%

ECONOMIC FACTORS AND NEXT YEAR'S BUDGETS AND RATES

During the budget process for fiscal year 2017-18, City staff and City Council considered many factors when setting the budget. Staff reviewed all of the fees charged to citizens and customers when using City services. Along with the fees, staff also considered the tax rate. They also reviewed expenditures and how the increases may be held to a minimum. The City set a goal to maintain financial stability, a lean organization, a competitively paid staff and investment in capital outlay. This helped to maintain the City's services with the least affect possible on our citizens through taxes, fees, and utility rates. The projected revenues and expenditures for the General Fund are budgeted to increase by \$1,018,358 or 3.7% above the FY17 budget.

- Property tax revenue is budgeted to increase by \$1,113,840. This is based upon an increase in values along with additional debt service requirements.
- The property tax rate of \$.5412/\$100 remained the same as the prior year. It is higher than the effective rate by \$.0262.
- Emergency Medical Services is budgeted to increase by \$50,000.
- Salaries and benefits are budgeted to increase by \$823,664. This includes a 2% cost of living effective January 1.
- Indigent Health Care is budgeted to increase by \$71,676, which represents a 4.6% increase.

The projected revenues and expenditures for the Utility Fund are budgeted to increase by \$133,537 or .3% above the FY17 budget.

- Water revenue is budgeted to increase by \$820,700 due to an anticipated increase in consumption along with an increase in rates.
- Sewer revenue is budgeted to increase by \$542,564 due to an anticipated increase in consumption along with an increase in rates.
- Salaries and benefits are budgeted to increase by \$485,770. This includes a 2% cost of living effective January 1.
- Indirect cost allocation is budgeted to increase by \$250,000 based upon prior years.
- Water Purchased is budgeted to increase by \$150,000 due to an increase in the rates paid to SSLGC.

CONTACTING THE CITY'S FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT

This financial report is designed to provide our citizens, taxpayers, customers, and investors and creditors with a general overview of the City's finances and to show the City's accountability for the money it receives. If you have questions about this report or need additional financial information, contact the Finance Department, at the City of Seguin, 205 North River Street, Seguin, Texas 78155.

BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

The basic financial statements include integrated sets of financial statements as required by the GASB. The sets of statements include:

- Government – wide financial statements
- Fund financial statements:
 - Governmental funds
 - Proprietary funds
 - Fiduciary funds

In addition, the notes to the financial statements are included to provide information that is essential to a user's understanding of the basic financial statements.

CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS
STATEMENT OF NET POSITION
SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

	Primary Government			Component Unit
	Governmental Activities	Business-Type Activities	Total	Seguin Economic Development Corporation
ASSETS				
Cash and Cash Equivalents	\$ 852,860	\$ 1,259,918	\$ 2,112,778	\$ 5,765
Investments	22,271,389	26,507,658	48,779,047	315,665
Receivables (net of allowances for uncollectibles)				
Taxes	2,129,221	-	2,129,221	-
Accounts	968,281	5,733,206	6,701,487	3,061
Grants	445,449	-	445,449	-
Miscellaneous	182,937	1,929,770	2,112,707	-
Due From Component Unit/ Primary Government	-	19,035	19,035	190,351
Inventories	22,167	1,714,946	1,737,113	-
Prepays	145,420	42,470	187,890	2,310
Restricted Assets:				
Cash and Cash Equivalents	74,794	58,021	132,815	-
Investments	15,579,099	13,939,344	29,518,443	-
Notes Receivable	-	-	-	244,999
Net Present Value of Lease Financing	-	461,972	461,972	-
Capital Assets:				
Land	4,584,815	727,026	5,311,841	2,190,912
Buildings & Improvements	37,836,176	35,938,858	73,775,034	89,547
Improvements Other than Buildings/Infrastructure	64,790,507	89,868,569	154,659,076	-
Transportation & Equipment	17,875,883	8,060,934	25,936,817	-
Construction in Progress	16,352,771	18,028,664	34,381,435	-
Accumulated Depreciation	(49,996,511)	(62,269,868)	(112,266,379)	(11,194)
Total Assets	<u>134,115,258</u>	<u>142,020,523</u>	<u>276,135,781</u>	<u>3,031,416</u>
DEFERRED OUTFLOWS OF RESOURCES				
Deferred Pension Related Outflows	4,538,440	1,597,883	6,136,323	-
Deferred Charge on Refunding	593,652	143,517	737,169	-
Total Deferred Outflows of Resources	<u>\$ 5,132,092</u>	<u>\$ 1,741,400</u>	<u>\$ 6,873,492</u>	<u>\$ -</u>

See accompanying notes to basic financial statements.

CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS
STATEMENT OF NET POSITION (CONTINUED)
SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

	Primary Government			Component Unit
	Governmental Activities	Business-Type Activities	Total	Seguin Economic Development Corporation
LIABILITIES				
Accounts Payable and Other Current Liabilities	\$ 3,240,273	\$ 3,879,682	\$ 7,119,955	\$ 43,934
Unearned Revenue	274,997	449,928	724,925	-
Accrued Interest Payable	232,155	-	232,155	-
Due to Component Unit/ Primary Government	190,351	-	190,351	19,035
Customer Deposits	-	619,800	619,800	600
<i>Payable from Restricted Assets:</i>				
Accrued Interest Payable	-	272,622	272,622	-
Current Portion of Long-Term Debt	-	1,773,378	1,773,378	-
<i>Noncurrent Liabilities:</i>				
Due within One Year	3,916,995	251,425	4,168,420	49,337
Due in more than One Year	101,236,211	58,174,303	159,410,514	753,923
Total Liabilities	109,090,982	65,421,138	174,512,120	866,829
NET POSITION				
Net Investment in Capital Assets	30,491,009	49,099,409	79,590,418	1,466,005
Restricted for:				
Tourism & Economic Development	1,066,076	-	1,066,076	-
Public Safety	573,590	-	573,590	-
Public Service	283,573	-	283,573	-
Debt Service	883,475	520,794	1,404,269	-
Impact Fees	-	2,455,075	2,455,075	-
Unrestricted	(3,141,355)	26,265,507	23,124,152	698,582
Total Net Position	\$ 30,156,368	\$ 78,340,785	\$ 108,497,153	\$ 2,164,587

See accompanying notes to basic financial statements.

CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS
STATEMENT OF ACTIVITIES
FOR THE YEAR ENDED SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

Functions and Programs	Expenses		Program Revenues		
	Direct	Indirect Allocation	Charges for Services	Operating Grants and Contributions	Capital Grants and Contributions
Primary Government:					
Governmental Activities:					
General Government	\$ 8,757,882	\$ (4,641,289)	\$ 3,647,445	\$ 382,005	\$ 8,393
Public Safety	15,578,523	-	3,478,473	126,314	44,642
Public Service	9,644,071	-	3,493,086	110,087	2,814,972
Interest on Long-term Debt	2,864,443	-	-	-	-
Total Governmental Activities	36,844,919	(4,641,289)	10,619,004	618,406	2,868,007
Business-Type Activities					
Utility	41,090,227	4,641,289	49,979,572	-	1,845,532
Total Business-Type Activities	41,090,227	4,641,289	49,979,572	-	1,845,532
Total Primary Government	\$ 77,935,146	\$ -	\$ 60,598,576	\$ 618,406	\$ 4,713,539
Component Unit:					
Seguin Economic Development Corporation					
	1,313,174	\$ -	\$ 7,200	4,453	\$ -
Total Component Unit	\$ 1,313,174	\$ -	\$ 7,200	\$ 4,453	\$ -
General Revenues:					
Taxes					
Property Taxes					
Franchise Taxes					
Sales Taxes					
Occupancy Taxes					
Industrial District Agreement Annual Payment					
Gain on Sale of Capital Assets					
Interest and Investment Earnings					
Total General Revenues					
Transfers					
Change in Net Position					
Net Position at Beginning of Year					
Net Position at End of Year					

See accompanying notes to basic financial statements.

Net (Expense) Revenue and Changes in Net Position

Primary Government			Component Unit
Governmental Activities	Business-Type Activities	Total	Seguin Economic Development Corporation
\$ (78,750)	\$ -	\$ (78,750)	\$ -
(11,929,094)	-	(11,929,094)	-
(3,225,926)	-	(3,225,926)	-
(2,864,443)	-	(2,864,443)	-
<u>(18,098,213)</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>(18,098,213)</u>	<u>-</u>
-	6,093,588	6,093,588	-
-	6,093,588	6,093,588	-
<u>(18,098,213)</u>	<u>6,093,588</u>	<u>(12,004,625)</u>	<u>-</u>
-	-	-	(1,301,521)
-	-	-	(1,301,521)
9,362,955	-	9,362,955	-
1,096,104	-	1,096,104	-
6,271,333	-	6,271,333	1,239,155
842,217	-	842,217	-
531,294	-	531,294	-
-	3,601	3,601	-
400,790	389,947	790,737	17,123
<u>18,504,693</u>	<u>393,548</u>	<u>18,898,241</u>	<u>1,256,278</u>
<u>81,723</u>	<u>(81,723)</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>-</u>
488,203	6,405,413	6,893,616	(45,243)
29,668,165	71,935,372	101,603,537	2,209,830
<u>\$ 30,156,368</u>	<u>\$ 78,340,785</u>	<u>\$ 108,497,153</u>	<u>\$ 2,164,587</u>

CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS
BALANCE SHEET
GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS
SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

	General Fund	2016 Certificates of Obligation	2016-A Certificates of Obligation
ASSETS			
Cash and Cash Equivalents	\$ 291,306	\$ -	\$ -
Investments	13,367,512	-	-
Receivables (net of allowances for uncollectibles):			
Taxes	1,701,228	-	-
Accounts	759,016	-	-
Grants	445,449	-	-
Miscellaneous	182,937	-	-
Inventories	22,167	-	-
Prepaid Items	98,671	-	-
Restricted Assets:			
Cash and Cash Equivalents	-	12,213	25,978
Investments	-	5,522,439	7,936,488
Total Assets	<u>\$ 16,868,286</u>	<u>\$ 5,534,652</u>	<u>\$ 7,962,466</u>
LIABILITIES			
Accounts Payable	\$ 1,623,372	\$ 12,509	\$ 281,657
Accrued Expenditures	639,414	-	-
Due to Component Unit	190,351	-	-
Unearned Revenues	248,906	-	-
Due to Other Funds	494	-	-
Due to Others	10,539	-	-
Total Liabilities	<u>2,713,076</u>	<u>12,509</u>	<u>281,657</u>
DEFERRED INFLOWS OF RESOURCES			
Unavailable Revenue	981,756	-	-
Total Deferred Inflows of Resources	<u>981,756</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>-</u>
FUND BALANCE			
<i>Nonspendable:</i>			
Prepays and Inventory	120,838	-	-
<i>Restricted:</i>			
Tourism & Economic Development	-	-	-
Public Safety	2,605	-	-
Public Service	5,300	-	-
Capital Projects	-	5,522,143	7,680,809
Debt Service	-	-	-
<i>Committed:</i>			
Stabilization Arrangement	1,536,104	-	-
Aquatic/ Golf Fees	-	-	-
<i>Assigned</i>			
	3,440	-	-
<i>Unassigned</i>			
	11,505,167	-	-
Total Fund Balances	<u>13,173,454</u>	<u>5,522,143</u>	<u>7,680,809</u>
TOTAL LIABILITIES, DEFERRED INFLOWS & FUND BALANCES	<u>\$ 16,868,286</u>	<u>\$ 5,534,652</u>	<u>\$ 7,962,466</u>

See accompanying notes to basic financial statements.

Debt Service Fund	Other Nonmajor Governmental Funds	Total Governmental Funds
\$ 244	\$ 283,495	\$ 575,045
885,667	6,887,074	21,140,253
229,719	198,274	2,129,221
-	191,183	950,199
-	-	445,449
-	-	182,937
-	-	22,167
-	43,326	141,997
-	36,603	74,794
-	2,120,172	15,579,099
<u>\$ 1,115,630</u>	<u>\$ 9,760,127</u>	<u>\$ 41,241,161</u>
\$ -	\$ 596,264	\$ 2,513,802
-	15,248	654,662
-	-	190,351
-	26,091	274,997
-	-	494
-	53,870	64,409
<u>-</u>	<u>691,473</u>	<u>3,698,715</u>
<u>222,489</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>1,204,245</u>
<u>222,489</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>1,204,245</u>
-	43,326	164,164
-	1,066,076	1,066,076
-	570,985	573,590
-	278,273	283,573
-	2,132,357	15,335,309
893,141	-	893,141
-	-	1,536,104
-	214,185	214,185
-	4,763,452	4,766,892
-	-	11,505,167
<u>893,141</u>	<u>9,068,654</u>	<u>36,338,201</u>
<u>\$ 1,115,630</u>	<u>\$ 9,760,127</u>	<u>\$ 41,241,161</u>

(this page intentionally left blank)

CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS
RECONCILIATION OF THE GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS
BALANCE SHEET TO THE STATEMENT OF NET POSITION
SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

TOTAL FUND BALANCE - TOTAL GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS	\$	36,338,201
Amounts reported for governmental activities in the Statement of Net Position are different because:		
Capital Assets used in governmental activities are not financial resources and, therefore, are not reported in the funds.		91,443,641
Internal service funds are used by management to charge costs related to employee insurance. The assets and liabilities of the internal service funds are included in governmental activities in the Statement of Net Position.		1,423,549
Other long-term assets are not available to pay for current-period expenditures and, therefore, are deferred in the funds.		1,204,248
Long-term liabilities, including bonds payable and capital leases, are not due and payable in the current period and, therefore, not reported in the funds:		
General Bonded Debt	74,680,288	
Unamortized Premiums and Deferred Charges	1,554,282	
Capital Leases	1,517,298	
Net Other Post Employment Benefit Obligation	371,320	
Net Pension Liability (Net of Deferred Outflows)	20,601,980	
Compensated Absences	1,295,948	(100,021,116)
Accrued interest payable on long-term-bonds is not due and payable in the current period and, therefore, not reported in the funds.		(232,155)
TOTAL NET POSITION - GOVERNMENTAL ACTIVITIES	\$	30,156,368

See accompanying notes to basic financial statements.

CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS
STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES,
AND CHANGES IN FUND BALANCES – GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS
FOR THE YEAR ENDED SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

	General Fund	2016 Certificates of Obligation	2016-A Certificates of Obligation
REVENUES			
Taxes	\$ 12,678,017	\$ -	\$ -
Licenses and Permits	941,986	-	-
Intergovernmental	1,396,474	171,758	-
Charges for Services	5,711,530	-	-
Fines and Forfeits	1,707,497	-	-
Interest	144,635	64,930	70,182
Miscellaneous	819,081	-	-
Total Revenues	<u>23,399,220</u>	<u>236,688</u>	<u>70,182</u>
EXPENDITURES			
Current:			
General Government	3,070,934	-	-
Public Safety	13,497,928	-	-
Public Service	7,191,996	-	-
Nondepartmental	2,386,674	-	-
Indirect Cost Allocation (Recovery)	(4,641,289)	-	-
Capital Projects/Outlay	929,461	3,406,181	1,189,373
Debt Service:			
Principal	-	-	-
Interest and Fiscal Charges	-	-	-
Bond Issue Costs	-	-	216,893
Total Expenditures	<u>22,435,704</u>	<u>3,406,181</u>	<u>1,406,266</u>
Excess (Deficiency) of Revenues Over (Under) Expenditures	<u>963,516</u>	<u>(3,169,493)</u>	<u>(1,336,084)</u>
OTHER FINANCING SOURCES (USES)			
Transfers In	95,000	-	-
Transfers Out	(3,043,073)	-	-
Proceeds of Capital Lease Financing	-	-	-
Bonded Debt Issues	-	-	8,539,773
Premiums on Issuance of Bonds	-	-	477,120
Total Other Financing Sources (Uses)	<u>(2,948,073)</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>9,016,893</u>
Net Change in Fund Balance	(1,984,557)	(3,169,493)	7,680,809
Fund Balances at Beginning of Year	15,158,011	8,691,636	-
Fund Balances at End of Year	<u>\$ 13,173,454</u>	<u>\$ 5,522,143</u>	<u>\$ 7,680,809</u>

See accompanying notes to basic financial statements.

Debt Service Fund	Other Nonmajor Governmental Funds	Total Governmental Funds
3,964,599	\$ 849,391	\$ 17,492,007
-	120,350	1,062,336
344,375	239,126	2,151,733
-	1,141,006	6,852,536
-	202,209	1,909,706
19,450	95,290	394,487
-	101,560	920,641
<u>4,328,424</u>	<u>2,748,932</u>	<u>30,783,446</u>
-	1,931,458	5,002,392
-	-	13,497,928
-	-	7,191,996
-	339,484	2,726,158
-	-	(4,641,289)
-	5,205,577	10,730,592
2,553,742	307,116	2,860,858
2,689,139	16,310	2,705,449
-	-	216,893
<u>5,242,881</u>	<u>7,799,945</u>	<u>40,290,977</u>
<u>(914,457)</u>	<u>(5,051,013)</u>	<u>(9,507,531)</u>
565,000	2,717,486	3,377,486
-	(261,590)	(3,304,663)
-	1,698,015	1,698,015
260,227	-	8,800,000
-	-	477,120
<u>825,227</u>	<u>4,153,911</u>	<u>11,047,958</u>
(89,230)	(897,102)	1,540,427
982,371	9,965,756	34,797,774
<u>\$ 893,141</u>	<u>\$ 9,068,654</u>	<u>\$ 36,338,201</u>

(this page intentionally left blank)

CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS
RECONCILIATION OF THE STATEMENT OF REVENUES,
EXPENDITURES, AND CHANGES IN FUND BALANCES OF
GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS TO THE STATEMENT OF ACTIVITIES
FOR THE YEAR ENDED SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NET CHANGE IN FUND BALANCES - GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS \$ 1,540,427

Amounts reported for governmental activities in the Statement of Activities are different because:

Governmental funds report capital outlays as expenditures. However, in the statement of activities the cost of those assets is allocated over their estimated useful lives and reported as depreciation expense.

Current Year Additions	10,327,527	
Contributions from Developers	2,093,513	
Current Period Depreciation	<u>(4,054,182)</u>	8,366,858

In the Statement of Activities, only the gain or loss on the disposal of a capital asset is reported, whereas in the governmental funds, the proceeds from the sale increase financial resources. Thus, the change in net position differs from the change in fund balance by the net book value of disposed assets. (19,949)

Revenues in the Statement of Activities that do not provide current financial resources are not reported as revenues in the funds.

Increase in Unavailable Revenues	(280,005)
----------------------------------	-----------

The issuance of long-term-debt (e.g. bonds) provides current financial resources to governmental funds, while the repayment of the principal of long-term debt consumes the current financial resources of governmental funds. Neither transaction, however, has any effect on net position. Also, governmental funds report the net effect of issuance costs, premiums, discounts, and similar items when debt is first issued, whereas these amounts are deferred and amortized in the Statement of Activities:

Proceeds of New Debt	(10,498,015)	
Premiums on Debt Issues	(477,120)	
Principal Payments	2,860,858	
Amortization of Deferred Charges & Premiums	<u>80,009</u>	(8,034,268)

The governmental funds report pension and other postemployment benefit contributions as expenditures when paid. However, in the statement of activities, differences between pension plan and other postemployment benefit contributions and costs for the year are reported as an asset or obligation. (1,220,871)

Some expenses reported in the Statement of Activities (including compensated absences and accrued interest expense) do not require the use of current financial resources and, therefore, are not reported as expenditures in governmental funds. (167,252)

Internal service funds are used by management to charge the costs of employee insurance to individual funds. The net revenue/(loss) is reported with governmental activities. 303,263

CHANGE IN NET POSITION - GOVERNMENTAL ACTIVITIES \$ 488,203

See accompanying notes to basic financial statements.

CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS
STATEMENT OF NET POSITION – PROPRIETARY FUNDS
SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

	Business-Type Activities Utility Fund	Governmental Activities Internal Service Funds
ASSETS		
<i>Current Assets</i>		
<i>Cash and Cash Equivalents:</i>		
Restricted Cash	\$ 58,021	\$ -
Unrestricted Cash	1,259,918	277,815
<i>Investments:</i>		
Restricted Investments	13,939,344	-
Unrestricted Investments	26,507,658	1,131,136
Accounts Receivable (Net)	5,733,206	-
Miscellaneous Receivables	1,929,770	18,082
Due from Other Funds	-	494
Due from Component Unit	19,035	-
Inventories	1,714,946	-
Prepaid Items	42,470	3,423
<i>Total Current Assets</i>	51,204,368	1,430,950
 <i>Noncurrent Assets</i>		
Net Present Value of Lease Financing	461,972	-
	461,972	-
 <i>Capital Assets:</i>		
Land	727,026	-
Buildings and Improvements	35,938,858	-
Improvements Other than Buildings	89,868,569	-
Transportation & Equipment	8,060,934	-
Construction in Progress	18,028,664	-
Accumulated Depreciation	(62,269,868)	-
<i>Capital Assets, net</i>	90,354,183	-
<i>Total Noncurrent Assets</i>	90,816,155	-
 Total Assets	 142,020,523	 1,430,950
 DEFERRED OUTFLOWS OF RESOURCES		
Deferred Pension Related Outflows	1,597,883	-
Deferred Charge on Refundings	143,517	-
Total Deferred Outflows of Resources	\$ 1,741,400	\$ -

Continued

See accompanying notes to basic financial statements.

CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS
STATEMENT OF NET POSITION – PROPRIETARY FUNDS (CONTINUED)
SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

	Business-Type Activities Utility Fund	Governmental Activities Internal Service Funds
LIABILITIES		
<i>Current Liabilities:</i>		
Accounts Payable	\$ 3,689,357	\$ 7,401
Accrued Expenses	423,238	-
Unearned Revenue	449,928	-
Customer Deposits	619,800	-
Current Maturities of Capital Leases	18,512	-
<i>Current Liabilities</i>	5,200,835	7,401
 <i>Current Liabilities Payable from Restricted Assets:</i>		
Accrued Interest Payable	272,622	-
Current Portion of Long-term Bonds	1,773,378	-
<i>Current Liabilities Payable from Restricted Assets</i>	2,046,000	-
<i>Total Current Liabilities</i>	7,246,835	7,401
 <i>Noncurrent Liabilities:</i>		
Capital Lease Payable	17,608	-
Compensated Absences	187,132	-
Net Other Post Employment Benefit Obligation	137,339	-
Net Pension Liability	8,453,199	-
Revenue & Refunding Bonds Payable	49,379,025	-
<i>Total Noncurrent Liabilities</i>	58,174,303	-
Total Liabilities	65,421,138	7,401
 NET POSITION		
Net Investment in Capital Assets	49,099,409	-
Restricted for:		
Debt Service	520,794	-
Impact Fees	2,455,075	-
Unrestricted	26,265,507	1,423,549
Total Net Position	\$ 78,340,785	\$ 1,423,549

See accompanying notes to basic financial statements.

CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS
STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENSES AND
CHANGES IN NET POSITION - PROPRIETARY FUNDS
FOR THE YEAR ENDED SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

	Business-Type Activities	Governmental Activities
	Utility Fund	Internal Service Funds
OPERATING REVENUES		
Charges for Utility Service	\$ 47,834,200	\$ -
Charges for Premiums	-	3,680,881
Miscellaneous Revenues	2,145,371	-
Total Operating Revenues	<u>49,979,571</u>	<u>3,680,881</u>
OPERATING EXPENSES		
Administration	2,294,180	3,392,820
Operation and Maintenance:		
Electric Distribution	21,710,301	-
Utility Services	1,135,092	-
Water Production	5,251,391	-
Water/Sewer Maintenance	4,384,411	-
Sewer	1,832,403	-
Economic Development	286,973	-
Facilities Maintenance	728,018	-
Information Technology	360,369	-
City Attorney	226,845	-
Nondepartmental	1,021,264	-
Indirect Cost Allocation	4,641,289	-
Total Operating Expenses	<u>43,872,536</u>	<u>3,392,820</u>
OPERATING INCOME (LOSS)	<u>6,107,035</u>	<u>288,061</u>
NONOPERATING REVENUES (EXPENSES)		
Interest Income	389,947	6,302
Gain (Loss) on Sale of Assets	3,601	-
Interest and Fiscal Charges	(1,559,703)	-
Bond Issue Costs	(299,276)	-
Total Nonoperating Revenues (Expenses)	<u>(1,465,431)</u>	<u>6,302</u>
Net Income (Loss) Before Contributions and Transfers	<u>4,641,604</u>	<u>294,363</u>
Capital Contributions	1,845,532	-
Transfers In	16,590	8,900
Transfers Out	(98,313)	-
	<u>1,763,809</u>	<u>8,900</u>
Change in Net Position	6,405,413	303,263
NET POSITION AT BEGINNING OF YEAR	71,935,372	1,120,286
NET POSITION AT END OF YEAR	<u>\$ 78,340,785</u>	<u>\$ 1,423,549</u>

See accompanying notes to basic financial statements.

CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS
STATEMENT OF CASH FLOWS - PROPRIETARY FUNDS
FOR THE YEAR ENDED SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

	Business-Type Activities	Governmental Activities
	Utility Fund	Internal Service Funds
Cash Flows From Operating Activities:		
Cash Received From Customers	\$ 49,287,029	\$ 3,670,916
Cash Paid for Employee Wages & Benefits	(7,450,073)	-
Cash Paid to Suppliers for Goods & Services	(29,264,614)	(3,394,753)
Cash Paid General Fund for Indirect Costs	(4,641,289)	-
Net Cash Provided (Used) by Operating Activities	7,931,053	276,163
Cash Flows From Noncapital Financing Activities:		
Transfers From Other Funds	(81,723)	8,900
Net Cash Provided (Used) by Noncapital Financing Activities	(81,723)	8,900
Cash Flows From Capital and Related Financing Activities:		
Purchase/Construction of Capital Assets	(14,459,123)	-
Proceeds from Revenue and Refunding Bonds	8,415,000	-
Premiums received on Bonds	494,961	-
Principal Payments on Long-term Bonds	(1,471,259)	-
Interest and Fiscal Charges Paid	(1,590,329)	-
Bond Issue Costs	(299,276)	-
Advances (To) From Component Unit	734	-
Proceeds from Sale of Capital Assets	3,601	-
Net Cash Provided (Used) by Capital and Related Financing Activities	(8,905,691)	-
Cash Flows From Investing Activities:		
Sale/(Purchase) of Investment Securities	578,156	(262,076)
Investment Interest Received	389,947	6,303
Lease Financing - Principal Payments Received	39,105	-
Net Cash Provided (Used) by Investing Activities	1,007,208	(255,773)
Net Increase (Decrease) in Cash and Cash Equivalents	(49,153)	29,290
Cash and Equivalents at Beginning of Year:		
Cash and Cash Equivalents	1,331,333	248,525
Restricted Cash and Cash Equivalents	35,759	-
	1,367,092	248,525
Cash and Cash Equivalents at End of Year:		
Cash and Cash Equivalents	1,259,918	277,815
Restricted Cash and Cash Equivalents	58,021	-
	\$ 1,317,939	\$ 277,815

Continued

See accompanying notes to basic financial statements.

CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS
STATEMENT OF CASH FLOWS - PROPRIETARY FUNDS (CONTINUED)
FOR THE YEAR ENDED SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

	Business-Type Activities	Governmental Activities
	Utility Fund	Internal Service Funds
Reconciliation of Operating Income to Net Cash Provided (Used) by Operating Activities:		
Operating Income (Loss)	\$ 6,107,035	\$ 288,061
Adjustments to Reconcile Operating Income to Net Cash Provided (Used) by Operating Activities:		
Depreciation:	3,505,895	-
(Increase) Decrease in Operating Assets:		
Accounts Receivable	(1,048,425)	(9,965)
Inventory/Prepaid Items	108,463	(3,423)
Net Pension Asset/Deferred Pension Related Outflows	170,892	-
Increase (Decrease) in Operating Liabilities:		
Accounts Payable	(1,582,433)	1,490
Accrued Expenses	26,153	-
Net Other Postemployment Benefit Obligation	47,985	-
Net Pension Liability	239,605	-
Unearned Revenue	354,398	-
Customer Deposits	1,485	-
	1,824,018	(11,898)
	\$ 7,931,053	\$ 276,163
Transactions Not Affecting Cash and Cash Equivalents:		
Capital and Related Financing Activities:		
Contributions from Developers - Capital Assets	\$ 1,845,532	\$ -

See accompanying notes to basic financial statements.

CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS
STATEMENT OF FIDUCIARY NET POSITION
SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

ASSETS	Private Purpose Trust Funds	Agency Fund
Cash and Cash Equivalents	\$ 1,915	\$ 27,507
Investments	283,573	-
Inventory	359,431	-
Total Assets	644,919	27,507
 LIABILITIES		
Accounts Payable/ Due to Others	-	27,507
Total Liabilities	-	\$ 27,507
 NET POSITION		
Held in Trust for Scholarship	2,491	
Held in Trust for Riverside Cemetery	14,768	
Held in Trust for Industrial Development	627,660	
Total Net Position	\$ 644,919	

See accompanying notes to basic financial statements.

CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS
 STATEMENT OF CHANGES IN FIDUCIARY NET POSITION
 FOR THE YEAR ENDED SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

	<u>Private Purpose Trust Funds</u>
ADDITIONS	
Interest	\$ 2,264
Total Additions	<u>2,264</u>
DEDUCTIONS	
Distributions to Participants	<u>2,000</u>
Total Deductions	<u>2,000</u>
Change in Net Position	264
Net Position, Beginning of Year	<u>644,655</u>
Net Position, End of Year	<u><u>\$ 644,919</u></u>

See accompanying notes to basic financial statements.

CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS
NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE A -- SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES

The City of Seguin, Texas (“City”) was incorporated in 1853. The City Charter was adopted on December 7, 1971, under the provisions of the Home Rule Charter Act of the State of Texas. The City operates under a Council-Manager form of government and provides the following services as authorized by its charter: police and fire protection, health services, maintenance of streets, planning and zoning, parks and recreation, general administrative services, electric, water, and wastewater services.

The financial statements of the City have been prepared in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) as applied to government units. The Governmental Accounting Standards Board (GASB) is the accepted standard setting body for establishing governmental accounting and financial reporting principles. The more significant of the City’s accounting policies are described below:

1. REPORTING ENTITY

Component Units

As required by generally accepted accounting principles, these financial statements present the government and its component units, entities for which the government is considered to be financially accountable. Blended component units, although legally separate entities, are, in substance, part of the government’s operations; thus, data from these units, if any existed, would be combined with data of the primary government. Each discretely presented component unit, on the other hand, is reported in a separate column in the government-wide financial statements to emphasize it is legally separate from the government.

The Seguin Economic Development Corporation, a nonprofit corporation, was incorporated under the Development Corporation Act of 1979, Texas Revised Civil Statutes Annotated, Article 5190.6, Section 4A. The Corporation is organized exclusively for public purposes of the City of Seguin, and the City Council appoints directors of the Corporation. It receives all proceeds from the 0.25% sales tax adopted in 1994 for economic development in Seguin. The corporation meets the criteria of a discretely presented component unit, described above, and is presented in the government-wide financial statements. Complete financial statements for the Seguin Economic Development Corporation may be obtained at City Hall.

Joint Ventures

A joint venture is a legally separate entity that results from a contractual arrangement and that is owned, operated, or governed by two or more participating governments. The following entities meet the criteria as joint ventures:

The Guadalupe Regional Medical Center is a joint venture between the City of Seguin and Guadalupe County. Each participating government appoints one-half of the board of directors and approves annual budgets. In addition, the participating governments are financially responsible for indigent health care provided by the hospital, and are contingently liable for hospital debts. Separate financial statements of the Guadalupe Regional Medical Center may be obtained by contacting the hospital administrator.

CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS
NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)
SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE A -- SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES (Continued)

1. REPORTING ENTITY (Continued)

Joint Ventures (Continued)

The Schertz/Seguin Local Government Corporation is a public, nonprofit corporation organized to aid, assist, and act on behalf of the cities of Schertz and Seguin in acquiring, constructing, maintaining, and operating a water utility system. The participating governments have an ongoing financial responsibility to fund the operation of the corporation through either purchase of services or by subsidizing the operations. Separate financial statements for the Schertz/Seguin Local Government Corporation may be obtained at City Hall.

Summarized financial data for joint ventures has been provided in Note M.

2. GOVERNMENT-WIDE AND FUND FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

The **government-wide financial statements** include the statement of net position and the statement of activities. Government-wide statements report information on all of the activities of the City and its component unit (except for City fiduciary activity). The effect of interfund transfers has been removed from the government-wide statements but continues to be reflected on the fund statements. Governmental activities are supported mainly by taxes and intergovernmental revenues. Business-type activities are financed in whole or in part by fees charged to external parties for goods and services. The primary government is reported separately from the component unit within the government-wide statements.

The statement of activities reflects the degree to which the direct expenses of a given function or segment is offset by program revenues. Direct expenses are those that are clearly identifiable with a specific function. Program revenues include 1) charges to customers or applicants who purchase, use or directly benefit from goods, services or privileges provided by a given function and 2) grants and contributions that are restricted to meeting the operational or capital requirements of a particular function or segment. Taxes and other items not properly included in program revenues are reported as general revenues.

Separate **fund financial statements** are provided for governmental funds, proprietary funds, and fiduciary funds even though the latter are excluded from the government-wide financial statements. The General Fund, 2016 Certificates of Obligation (Capital Projects) Fund, 2016-A Certificates of Obligation (Capital Projects) Fund, and the Debt Service Fund meet criteria as **major governmental funds**. Each major fund is reported in separate columns in the fund financial statements. Nonmajor funds include other Special Revenue and Capital Projects Funds. The combined amounts for these funds are reflected in a single column in the fund Balance Sheet and Statement of Revenues, Expenditures, and Changes in Fund Balances. Detailed statements for nonmajor funds are presented in the Combining Fund Statements and Schedules as "Supplementary Information".

CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS
NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)
SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE A -- SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES (Continued)

3. MEASUREMENT FOCUS, BASIS OF ACCOUNTING, AND FINANCIAL STATEMENT PRESENTATION

The **government-wide financial statements** are reported using the economic resources measurement focus and the accrual basis of accounting. This measurement focus is also used for the proprietary fund financial statements. Revenues are recorded when earned and expenses are recorded when a liability is incurred, regardless of the timing of related cash flows. Property taxes are recognized as revenues in the year for which they are levied. Major revenue types, which have been accrued, are revenue from investments, intergovernmental revenue and charges for services. Grants are recognized as revenue when all applicable eligibility requirements imposed by the provider are met.

Revenues are classified as *program revenues* and *general revenues*. Program revenues include 1) charges to customers or applicants for goods, services, or privileges provided, 2) operating grants and contributions, and 3) capital grants and contributions. General revenues include all taxes and grants not restricted to specific programs and investment earnings.

Governmental fund level financial statements are reported using current financial resources measurement focus and the modified accrual basis of accounting. Revenues are recognized as soon as they are both measurable and available. Revenues are considered available when they are collectible within the current period or soon enough thereafter to pay liabilities of the current period. Measurable and available revenues include revenues expected to be received within 60 days after the fiscal year ends. Receivables which are measurable but not collectible within 60 days after the end of the fiscal period are reported as deferred revenue.

Expenditures generally are recorded when a fund liability is incurred; however, debt service expenditures, as well as expenditures related to compensated absences and claims and judgments, are recorded only when the liability has matured and payment is due.

The government reports the following major governmental funds:

The General Fund is the general operating fund of the City and is always classified as a major fund. The General Fund is used to account for all financial resources except those required to be accounted for in another fund. Major revenue sources include property taxes, charges for services, intergovernmental revenues and investment of idle funds. Primary expenditures are for general administration, public safety, public service and capital acquisition. Nondepartmental expenses include insurance costs, professional services and miscellaneous costs that do not benefit any one department, as well as contributions to local charitable organizations and the Guadalupe Regional Medical Center.

2016 Certificates of Obligation Fund is used to account for funds received from the 2016 Certificates of Obligation to finance major improvements to the City's fairgrounds, constructing an animal services facility, as well as certain street and drainage improvements.

CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS
NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)
SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE A -- SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES (Continued)

3. MEASUREMENT FOCUS, BASIS OF ACCOUNTING, AND FINANCIAL STATEMENT PRESENTATION (Continued)

2016-A Certificates of Obligation Fund is used to account for funds received from the 2016-A Certificates of Obligation to finance street and drainage improvements to selected city streets.

Debt Service Fund accounts for ad valorem tax and contributions from the component unit to support city bonded debt.

Nonmajor funds include Special Revenue Funds (other than major projects and grants) and Capital Projects Funds.

Proprietary fund level financial statements are used to account for activities, which are similar to those often found in the private sector. The measurement focus is upon determination of net income, financial position and cash flows. The City's Proprietary Fund is the Utility Fund (used to account for the provision of electric, water and sewer services to residents) and the Internal Service Funds used to account for the City's group medical insurance program and workers compensation benefits.

Revenues are derived from charges for services for utilities, city contributions, employee and retiree/cobra premiums, and investment of idle funds. Expenses are charges incurred for operating, purchases of electricity and water, premiums and administrative expenses for insurance.

The **Proprietary Funds** are accounted for using the accrual basis of accounting as follows:

Revenues are recognized when earned, and expenses are recognized when the liabilities are incurred. Current-year contributions, administrative expenses and benefit payments, which are not received or paid until the subsequent year, are accrued.

Proprietary funds distinguish operating revenues and expenses from non-operating. Operating revenues and expenses generally result from providing services and producing and delivering goods in connection with a proprietary fund's principal ongoing operations.

Fiduciary fund level financial statements include fiduciary funds which are classified into private purpose trust and agency funds. Fiduciary fund reporting focuses on net position and changes in net position. Agency funds do not involve a formal trust agreement. Agency funds are custodial in nature (assets equal liabilities) and do not involve measurement of results of operations.

4. CASH AND CASH EQUIVALENTS

Cash and cash equivalents include cash deposits and investments with a maturity date within three (3) months of the date acquired by the City.

CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS
NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)
SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE A -- SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES (Continued)

5. INVESTMENTS

State statutes authorize the City to invest in (a) obligations of the United States or its agencies and instrumentalities; (b) direct obligations of the State of Texas or its agencies; (c) other obligations, the principal and interest of which are unconditionally guaranteed or insured by the State of Texas or the United States; (d) obligations of states, agencies, counties, cities, and other political subdivisions of any state having been rated as to investment quality by a nationally recognized investment rating firm and having received a rating of not less than A or its equivalent; (e) certificates of deposit by state and national banks domiciled in this state that are (i) guaranteed or insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, or its successor; or, (ii) secured by obligations that are described by (a) - (d). Statutes also allow investing in local government investment pools organized and rated in accordance with the Interlocal Cooperation Act, whose assets consist exclusively of the obligations of the United States or its agencies and instrumentalities and repurchase assessments involving those same obligations. Public funds investment pools in Texas ("Pools") are established under the authority of the Interlocal Cooperation Act, Chapter 791 of the Texas Government Code, and are subject to the provisions of the Public Funds Investment Act (the "Act"), Chapter 2256 of the Texas Government Code. In addition to other provisions of the Act designed to promote liquidity and safety of principal, the Act requires Pools to: 1) have an advisory board composed of participants in the pool and other persons who do not have a business relationship with the pool and are qualified to advise the pool; 2) maintain a continuous rating of no lower than AAA or AAAM (or equivalent) rating by at least one nationally recognized rating service; and 3) maintain the market value of its underlying investment portfolio within one-half of one percent of the value of its shares.

The City reports investments at fair value based on the hierarchy established by generally accepted accounting principles. The fair value hierarchy, which has three levels, is based on the valuation inputs used to measure an asset's fair value: Level 1 inputs are quoted prices in active markets for identical assets; Level 2 inputs are significant other observable inputs; Level 3 inputs are significant unobservable inputs. Investments are stated at fair value (plus accrued interest) except for money market investments and participating interest-earning investment contracts (U.S. Treasuries) that have a remaining maturity at time of purchase of one year or less. Those investments are stated at amortized cost. Likewise, certificates of deposit are stated at amortized cost (see Note B).

6. ACCOUNTS RECEIVABLE

Property taxes are levied based on taxable value at January 1 and become due October 1, 2016 and past due after January 31, 2017. Accordingly, receivables and revenues for property taxes are reflected on the government-wide statement based on the full accrual method of accounting. Property tax receivables for prior year's levy are shown net of an allowance for uncollectible in the amount of \$27,616.

Accounts receivable from other governments include amounts due from grantors for approved grants for specific programs and reimbursements for services performed by the City. Program grants are recorded as receivables and revenues at the time all eligibility requirements established by the provider have been met.

CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS
NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)
SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE A -- SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES (Continued)

6. ACCOUNTS RECEIVABLE (Continued)

Reimbursements for services performed are recorded as receivables and revenues when they are earned in the government-wide statements. Included are fines and costs assessed by the court action and billable services for certain contracts. Revenues received in advance of the costs being incurred are recorded as deferred revenue in the fund statements. Receivables are shown net of an allowance for uncollectibles.

7. SHORT-TERM INTERFUND RECEIVABLES/PAYABLES

During the course of operations, numerous transactions occur between individual funds for goods provided or services rendered. These receivables and payables are classified as “due from other funds” or “due to other funds” on the fund statements. Any residual balances outstanding between the governmental activities and business-type activities are reported in the government-wide financial statements as “internal balances”.

8. INVENTORIES & PREPAID ITEMS

Inventories of consumable supplies are valued at cost, which approximates market, using the first in/first out (FIFO) method. The costs of governmental fund type inventories are recorded as expenditures when consumed rather than when purchased.

Inventories of repair and replacement parts for the utility system are valued at cost, which approximates market, using the moving average cost method.

Certain payments to vendors reflect costs applicable to future accounting periods and are recorded as prepaid items in both government-wide and fund financial statements and in the fund financial statements are offset by a reservation of fund balance which indicates they do not represent “available spendable resources.”

9. RESTRICTED ASSETS

Certain proceeds of General Obligation Bonds, Enterprise Fund revenue bonds, as well as certain resources set aside for their repayment, are classified as restricted assets on the balance sheet because their use is limited by applicable bond covenants. Funds are segregated to report those proceeds of revenue bond issuances that are restricted for use in construction. Funds are also segregated to provide for debt service as provided under bond indenture agreements.

10. CAPITAL ASSETS

Capital assets, which include land, buildings and improvements, equipment, and infrastructure assets, are reported in the applicable governmental or business-type activities column in the government-wide financial statements. Capital assets, such as equipment, are defined as assets with a cost of \$5,000 or more. Infrastructure assets include City-owned streets, sidewalks, curbs and bridges.

CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS
 NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)
 SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE A -- SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES (Continued)

10. CAPITAL ASSETS (Continued)

Capital assets are recorded at historical costs if purchased or constructed. Donated capital assets are recorded at estimated fair market value at the date of donation, with the exception of works of art and capital assets received in a service concession arrangement. Those assets are reported at acquisition value rather than fair value.

The Costs of normal maintenance and repairs that do not add to the value of the asset or materially extend assets lives are not capitalized. Interest has not been capitalized during the construction period on property, plant and equipment.

Capital assets are depreciated using the straight-line method over the following estimated useful lives:

<u>ASSETS</u>	<u>YEARS</u>
Buildings and improvements	20 to 40 years
Improvements other than buildings	20 to 40 years
Utility system in service	20 to 67 years
Machinery and equipment	5 to 15 years

11. DEFERRED OUTFLOWS/INFLOWS OF RESOURCES

In addition to assets, the statement of financial position will sometimes report a separate section for deferred outflows of resources. This separate financial statement element, *deferred outflows of resources*, represents a consumption of net position that applies to a future period(s) and so will not be recognized as an outflow of resources (expense/expenditure) until then. The City has the following items that qualify for reporting in this category: deferred pension related costs which will be included in the subsequent actuarial valuation, and deferred charge on refundings reported in the government-wide statement of net position, as well as the Proprietary Fund statement of position. A deferred charge on refunding results from the difference in the carrying value of refunded debt and its reacquisition price. This amount is deferred and amortized over the shorter of the life of the refunded or refunding debt.

Deferred inflows of resources represents an acquisition of net position that applies to a future period and so will not be recognized as an inflow of resource (revenue) until that time. Unavailable revenue is reported only in the governmental funds balance sheet under a modified accrual basis of accounting. Unavailable revenues from property tax and EMS receivables are deferred and recognized as an inflow of resource in the period the amounts become available.

CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS
NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)
SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE A -- SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES (Continued)

12. COMPENSATED ABSENCES

The City permits employees to accumulate earned but unused vacation pay benefits up to the amount earned in two years. Upon resignation, an employee may receive pay for any unused accrued vacation provided the employee gives two weeks written notice of the resignation and is not subject to discharge for misconduct. Unused sick leave may be accumulated to certain limits. In the event of termination, no reimbursement is made for accumulated sick leave. No liability is reported for unpaid accumulated sick leave. Liabilities for compensated absences are recognized in the fund statements to the extent the liabilities have matured (i.e. are due for payment). Compensated absences are accrued in the government-wide statements.

13. UNEARNED REVENUE

Unearned revenues arise when assets are recognized before revenue recognition criteria have been satisfied. Grant and reimbursement revenues received in advance of expenses/expenditures are reflected as unearned revenue.

14. LONG-TERM OBLIGATIONS

In the government-wide financial statements, long-term debt and other long-term obligations are reported as liabilities under governmental activities or proprietary fund type statement of net position. On new bond issues, bond premiums and discounts are amortized over the life of the bonds. Bonds payable are reported net of the applicable bond premium or discount. Bond issuance costs are expensed as incurred.

In the fund financial statements, governmental fund types recognize bond premiums and discounts, as well as bond issuance costs during the current period. The face amount of debt issued is reported as other financing sources. Premiums received on debt issuances are reported as other financing sources while discounts on debt issuances are reported as other financing uses. Issuance costs, whether or not withheld from the actual debt proceeds received, are reported as debt service expenditures.

15. PENSIONS

The net pension liability, deferred outflows related to pensions, and pension expense, information about the fiduciary net position of the Texas Municipal Retirement System (TMRS), and additions to and deductions from TMRS' fiduciary net position have been determined on the same basis as they are reported by TMRS. For this purpose, benefit payments (including refunds of employee contributions) are recognized when due and payable in accordance with the benefit terms. Investments are reported at fair value.

CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS
NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)
SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE A -- SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES (Continued)

16. FUND EQUITY

In the fund financial statements, governmental funds report aggregate amounts for five classifications of fund balances based on the constraints imposed on the use of these resources. The nonspendable fund balance classification includes amounts that cannot be spent because they are either (a) not in spendable form – pre-paid items or inventories; or (b) legally or contractually required to be maintained intact.

The spendable portion of the fund balance comprises the remaining four classifications: restricted, committed, assigned, and unassigned.

Restricted fund balance. This classification reflects the constraints imposed on resources either (a) externally by creditors, grantors, contributors, or laws or regulations of other governments; or (b) imposed by law through constitutional provisions or enabling legislation.

Committed fund balance. These amounts can only be used for specific purposes pursuant to constraints imposed by formal resolutions or ordinances of the city council – the government’s highest level of decision making authority. The City Council is the highest level of decision-making authority for the city that can, by adoption of an ordinance prior to the end of the fiscal year, commit fund balance. Once adopted, the limitation imposed by the ordinance remains in place until a similar action is taken (by adoption of another ordinance) to remove or revise the limitation.

The City Council adopted an ordinance in March 2012 establishing an *emergency fund stabilization arrangement*. The Ordinance requires additions to the fund in the event the fund balance falls below \$2,000,000. Additions are to come from interest earnings, direct transfers from the General Fund and/or Utility Fund, or reimbursements from insurance or grants for expenditures incurred by the fund. The stabilization fund may be expended on recovery efforts for public infrastructure damage that occurs as a result of a disaster declared by the City or the State. During fiscal year 2017, significant expenditures occurred due to Hurricane Harvey. Guadalupe County was included in the federal disaster area and the City anticipates a partial reimbursement from FEMA for expenses incurred due to flood damage.

Assigned fund balance. This classification reflects the amounts constrained by the city’s “intent” to be used for specific purposes, but are neither restricted nor committed. The City Council has designated the City Manager as the responsible agent for assigning fund balances. Assigned fund balances include all remaining amounts (except negative balances) that are reported in governmental funds, other than the General Fund, that are not classified as nonspendable and are neither restricted nor committed.

CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS
NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)
SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE A -- SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES (Continued)

16. FUND EQUITY (Continued)

As of September 30, 2017, the City Manager had assigned fund balances for the following:

- Excess recycling fees over expenditures were assigned for future expenditures associated with “green” waste disposal (\$1,348), also favorable budget variances for street maintenance were assigned for future street projects (\$2,092).
- Funds set aside in nonmajor capital project funds that are not otherwise restricted by bond covenants are assigned for specific capital projects.

Total assigned funds in the General Fund were \$3,440. Total assigned balances in nonmajor capital project funds were \$4,763,452.

Unassigned fund balance. This fund balance is the residual classification for the General Fund. It is also used to report negative fund balances in other governmental funds.

When both restricted and unrestricted resources are available for use, it is the City’s policy to use externally restricted resources first, then unrestricted resources – committed, assigned, and unassigned – in order as needed.

The City Council has set a General Fund minimum fund balance target at three months of expenditures and recurring transfers. No other fund balance policies exist.

17. NET POSITION

Net position represents the difference between assets and liabilities. Net investment in capital assets consists of capital assets, net of accumulated depreciation, reduced by the outstanding balances of any borrowing used for the acquisition, construction or improvements of those assets, and adding back unspent proceeds. Net positions are reported as restricted when there are limitations imposed on their use either through the enabling legislation adopted by the City or through external restrictions imposed by creditors, grantors, or laws or regulations of other governments.

18. INTERFUND TRANSACTIONS

Legally authorized transfers are treated as interfund transfers and are included in the results of operations of both Governmental and Proprietary Funds.

The City allocates to the Utility (Proprietary) Fund an indirect cost percentage of general government administration expenses that are paid through the General Fund. During the year ended September 30, 2017, the City allocated \$4,641,289 as a transfer for such services. The indirect cost allocation is reflected as an operating expense in the Utility Fund, and a reduction of current expenditures in the General Fund, and in a separate column in the Statement of Activities.

CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS
NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)
SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE A -- SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES (Continued)

19. OPERATING REVENUES AND EXPENSES

Operating revenues are those revenues that are generated directly from the primary activity of the enterprise. For the City, those revenues are charges for electric, water, and sewer services and premiums for employee insurances. Operating expenses are the necessary costs incurred to provide the service that is the primary activity. Revenues and expenses not meeting these definitions are reported as nonoperating.

20. USE OF ESTIMATES

The preparation of financial statements in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles requires management to make estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities and disclosure of contingent assets and liabilities at the date of the financial statements and the reported amounts of revenues and expenses during the reporting period. Actual results could differ from those estimates.

21. COMPARATIVE DATA/RECLASSIFICATIONS

Comparative data for the prior year has been provided for the General Fund and Utility Fund in the fund financial statements in order to provide an understanding of the changes in the financial position and operation of these funds. Certain reclassifications have been made to the 2016 financial statements to conform to the 2017 financial statement presentation. The reclassifications had no effect on the changes in financial position.

22. NEW REPORTING REQUIREMENTS

Statement No. 75, *“Accounting and Financial Reporting for Postemployment Benefits Other Than Pensions.”* This statement changes the focus of accounting of postemployment benefits other than pension from whether they are responsibly funding the benefits over time to a point-in-time liability that is reflected on the employer’s financial statements for any actuarially underfunded portion of benefits earned to date. This statement will become effective for the City in fiscal year 2018.

CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS
NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)
SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE B -- DEPOSITS AND INVESTMENTS

As of September 30, 2017, the City of Seguin had the following investments:

Investment Type	Fair Value	Input Level	Weighted Average Maturity (Days)
<i>Primary Government</i>			
Local Government Investment Pools:			
TexPool	\$ 7,017,906	1	37
LOGIC	57,271,175	1	78
Certificates of Deposit	7,301,978	1	427
Florida State Revenue Bond	6,990,000	1	269
	<u>\$ 78,581,059</u>		
Portfolio Weighted Average Maturity			124
<i>Component Unit</i>			
Local Government Investment Pools:			
TexPool	\$ 193,868	1	37
LOGIC	121,797	1	78
	<u>\$ 315,665</u>		
Portfolio Weighted Average Maturity			53

Investment Rate Risk. The City and component unit manage exposure to declines in fair values by limiting the weighted average maturity of its investment portfolio to less than one year.

Credit Risk. The City's investment policy limits investments to obligations of the United States (up to 95% of total invested funds) or its agencies and instrumentalities (maximum 80% of funds); direct obligations of the State of Texas; obligations of states, agencies, contracts, cities, and other political subdivisions rated as to investment quality of not less than AAA by a nationally recognized investment firm. U.S. Government Securities are not considered to have credit risk and do not require disclosure of credit quality. The Florida State Revenue Bond is rated AA and Aa3 by S&P and Moody's respectively.

The City may also invest funds in government investment pools provided the pool maintains a AAA rating, the pool maintains a stable asset value, and the average dollar weighted maturity does not exceed 90 days. As of September 30, 2017, the investments in TexPool and LOGIC were rated AAAM by Standard & Poor's. The City may invest in Money Market Mutual funds that are regulated by the SEC and have a dollar weighted average stated maturity of 90 days or less and maintain a net asset value of \$1.00 per share.

The City's and Component Units' investments in pools are reported at an amount determined by the fair value per share of the pool's underlying portfolio, unless the pool is 2a7-like, in which case they are reported at share value. A 2a7-like pool is one which is not registered with the Securities and Exchange Commission as an investment company, but nevertheless has a policy that it will, and does, operate in a manner consistent with the SEC's Rule 2a7 of the Investment Company Act of 1940. Both Texpool and Logic Pools operate in a manner consistent with Rule 2a7. Therefore, the investments are reported at \$1 per share, which approximates fair value. There was no change in fair value of the investment pools for the year ended September 30, 2017.

CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS
NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)
SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE B -- DEPOSITS AND INVESTMENTS (Continued)

Custodial Credit Risk - Deposits. In the case of deposits, this is the risk that in the event of a bank failure, the government's deposits may not be returned to it. As of September 30, 2017, the government's deposits were fully collateralized or insured by FDIC. The City's certificates of deposit are brokered through the City's depository and are fully insured through FDIC.

The Component Unit had deposits that were fully insured by FDIC.

Custodial Credit Risk – Investments. For an investment, this is the risk that, in the event of the failure of the counterparty, the government will not be able to recover the value of its investments or collateral securities that are in the possession of an outside party. As of September 30, 2017, the City and Component Unit were not exposed to custodial credit risk.

NOTE C -- PROPERTY TAX CALENDAR

The City's property tax is levied and becomes collectible each October 1 based on the assessed values listed as of the prior January 1, which is the date a lien attaches to all taxable property in the City. Assessed values are established by the Guadalupe County Appraisal District at 100% of estimated market value. Assessed values are reduced by lawful exemptions to arrive at taxable values. A revaluation of all property is required to be completed every four (4) years. The total taxable value as of January 1, 2016, upon which the fiscal 2017 levy was based, was \$1,798,558,709 (i.e., market value less exemptions). The estimated market value was \$2,793,328,727 making the taxable value 64% of the estimated market value.

The City is permitted by the Constitution of the State of Texas to levy taxes up to \$2.50 per \$100 of taxable assessed valuation for all governmental purposes. Pursuant to a decision of the Attorney General of the State of Texas, up to \$1.50 per \$100 of assessed valuation may be used for the payment of long-term debt. The combined tax rate to finance general governmental services, including the payment of principal and interest on long-term debt, for the year ended September 30, 2017, was \$0.5412 per \$100 of assessed value, which means that the City has a tax margin of \$1.9588 for each \$100 value and could increase its annual tax levy by approximately \$35,230,168 based upon the present assessed valuation of \$1,798,558,709 before the limit is reached. However, the City may not adopt a tax rate that exceeds the tax rate calculated in accordance with the Texas Property Tax Code without holding a public hearing. The Property Tax Code subjects an increase in the effective tax rate to a referendum election, if petitioned by registered voters, when the effective tax rate increase is more than eight percent (8%) of the previous year's effective tax rate.

Property taxes are recorded as receivables and unearned revenues at the time the taxes are assessed. In governmental funds, revenues are recognized as the related ad valorem taxes are collected. Additional amounts estimated to be collectible in time to be a resource for payment of obligations incurred during the fiscal year and therefore susceptible to accrual in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles have been recognized as revenue. In the government-wide financial statements, the entire levy is recognized as revenue, net of estimated uncollectible amounts (if any), at the levy date.

CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS
NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)
SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE D -- INTERFUND RECEIVABLE/PAYABLE

During the course of its operations, the City has numerous transactions between funds to finance operations, provide services, construct assets, and service debt. To the extent that certain transactions between funds had not been paid or received as of September 30, 2017, balances of interfund amounts receivable or payable have been recorded as follows:

	Due From	Due To
<i>Primary Government</i>		
General Fund		
Interval Service Fund	\$ -	\$ 494
	-	494
Internal Service Fund		
General Fund	494	-
	494	-
Totals	\$ 494	\$ 494

	Due From	Due To
Primary Government		
General Fund	\$ -	\$ 190,351
Enterprise Fund	19,035	-
	19,035	190,351
Component Unit		
General Fund	190,351	-
Enterprise Fund	-	19,035
	190,351	19,035
Totals	\$ 209,386	\$ 209,386

NOTE E -- NOTES RECEIVABLE (COMPONENT UNIT)

The SEDC (Component Unit) provides incentives in the form of grants and notes receivable to area businesses in conjunction with its function of generating economic development. Various notes receivable were outstanding as of September 30, 2017 with interest rates ranging from 3.0% to 5.5% and mature from 2023 through 2026. Future payments on the notes are as follows:

Fiscal Year	Principal	Interest	Total
2018	\$ 37,211	\$ 12,204	\$ 49,415
2019	39,270	10,145	49,415
2020	41,443	7,972	49,415
2021	43,739	5,676	49,415
2022	46,162	3,253	49,415
2023-2026	37,174	971	38,145
	\$ 244,999	\$ 40,221	\$ 285,220

CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS
NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)
SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE F -- NET PRESENT VALUE OF LEASE FINANCING

The City has leased property located at 2460 Crossroads Blvd., consisting of a 49,120 square foot building and improvements, to Pure and Gentle Soap Products, Inc. under a sales-type lease agreement. The lease is for an original term of twenty (20) years and transfers property to the lessee for \$1 at the end of the lease term (2026), or earlier by paying the remaining base rental payments under the lease, discounted at 5.75%.

The agreement calls for the lessee to operate a business within the premises in order to generate sales tax revenue, property tax and utility revenue. Failure to continue the business would be considered a breach of the contract.

Future minimum lease payments under the lease are as follows:

September 30,		
2018	\$	75,151
2019		75,151
2020		75,151
2021		98,277
2022		105,986
Thereafter		344,615
Total Payments		774,331
Less: Amount Representing Interest		(312,359)
Net Present Value of Lease Financing	\$	461,972

NOTE G -- CAPITAL ASSETS

Capital asset activity for the year ended September 30, 2017, was as follows:

	Balance 10/1/2016	Additions	Disposals	Transfers/ Adjustments	Balance 9/30/2017
<i>Governmental Activities</i>					
Land	\$ 4,467,991	\$ 116,825	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 4,584,816
Construction in Progress	19,981,296	3,280,013	-	(6,908,538)	16,352,771
Total Assets Not Depreciated	24,449,287	3,396,838	-	(6,908,538)	20,937,587
Buildings and Improvements	33,889,397	2,349,273	-	1,597,506	37,836,176
Improvements Other Than Buildings	56,208,317	3,271,158	-	5,311,032	64,790,507
Transportation and Equipment	15,063,342	3,403,771	(591,230)	-	17,875,883
Totals at Historical Cost	129,610,343	12,421,040	(591,230)	-	141,440,152
Less Accumulated Depreciation:					
Buildings and Improvements	(7,465,415)	(701,824)	-	-	(8,167,239)
Improvement Other Than Buildings	(29,061,881)	(1,726,811)	-	-	(30,788,692)
Transportation and Equipment	(9,986,314)	(1,625,547)	571,281	-	(11,040,580)
	(46,513,610)	(4,054,182)	571,281	-	(49,996,511)
Governmental Capital Assets, Net	\$ 83,096,733	\$ 8,366,858	\$ (19,949)	\$ -	\$ 91,443,641

CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS
NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)
SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE G -- CAPITAL ASSETS

<u>Business-Type Activities</u>	Balance 10/1/2016	Additions	Disposals	Transfers/ Adjustments	Balance 9/30/2017
Land	\$ 727,026	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 727,026
Construction in Progress	34,102,978	7,317,047	-	(23,391,361)	18,028,664
Total Assets Not Depreciated	34,830,004	7,317,047	-	(23,391,361)	18,755,690
Buildings and Improvements	24,672,813	-	-	11,266,045	35,938,858
Utility System	69,105,148	8,638,105	-	12,125,316	89,868,569
Transportation and Equipment	7,755,774	349,503	(44,343)	-	8,060,934
Totals at Historical Cost	136,363,739	16,304,655	(44,343)	-	152,624,051
Less Accumulated Depreciation:					
Buildings and Improvements	(18,581,432)	(254,276)	-	-	(18,835,708)
Improvement Other Than Buildings	(34,791,118)	(2,747,214)	-	-	(37,538,332)
Transportation and Equipment	(5,435,766)	(504,405)	44,343	-	(5,895,828)
	(58,808,316)	(3,505,895)	44,343	-	(62,269,868)
Business-Type Capital Assets, Net	<u>\$ 77,555,423</u>	<u>\$ 12,798,760</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ 90,354,183</u>
<i>Discretely Presented Component Unit</i>					
Land	\$ 2,190,912	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 2,190,912
Buildings and Improvements	89,547	-	-	-	89,547
Accumulated Depreciation	(9,474)	(1,720)	-	-	(11,194)
	<u>\$ 2,270,985</u>	<u>\$ (1,720)</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ 2,269,265</u>

Primary Government

Depreciation Expense was charged to functions as follows:

<i>Governmental Activities:</i>	
General Government	\$ 24,234
Public Safety	1,129,000
Public Service	2,439,704
Nondepartmental	461,244
<i>Total Governmental Activities</i>	<u>\$ 4,054,182</u>
 <i>Business-Type Activities:</i>	
Administration	\$ 5,865
Electric	781,750
Water Production	475,362
Water Distribution	1,551,137
Sewer Plant	355,668
Other	336,113
<i>Total Business-Type Activities</i>	<u>\$ 3,505,895</u>

CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS
NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)
SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE H -- CAPITAL LEASES

The City has entered into a lease agreement to finance the acquisition of public safety, public works and golf equipment. The City has also financed the acquisition of the Springs Hill Wastewater Collection System through its Utility Fund. These lease agreements qualify as capital leases for accounting purposes and, therefore, have been recorded at the present value of their future minimum lease payments as of the inception date.

The assets acquired through capital leases are as follows:

<i>Assets:</i>	Governmental Activities	Business-Type Activities
Police Equipment	\$ 1,360,119	\$ -
Golf Course Equipment	38,405	
Public Works Equipment	750,324	
Wastewater Collection System	-	425,000
Less: Accumulated Depreciation	(253,712)	(262,917)
Total	<u>\$ 1,895,136</u>	<u>\$ 162,083</u>

Future minimum obligations and the net present value of these minimum lease payments as of September 30, 2017 were as follows:

Year Ending September 30,	Governmental Activities	Business-Type Activities
2018	\$ 450,771	\$ -
2019	508,044	35,000
2020	299,582	35,000
2021	334,872	-
Total Payments	<u>1,593,269</u>	<u>70,000</u>
Less: Amount Representing Interest	(75,971)	(33,880)
Present Value of Minimum Lease Payments	<u>\$ 1,517,298</u>	<u>\$ 36,120</u>

CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS
NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)
SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE I -- LONG-TERM DEBT

Bonded debt and obligations payable at September 30, 2017, comprise the following individual issues:

General Obligation Bonds:

\$2,884,816 2011 General Obligation Refunding Bonds due in annual installments of \$265,000 to \$550,000 through September 1, 2021; interest at 2.0% to 3.0%	\$ 1,165,288
\$4,350,000 2013 General Obligation Refunding Bonds due in annual installments of \$65,000 to \$460,000 through February 1, 2024; interest at 1.51%	3,090,000
\$19,785,000 2014 General Obligation Bonds due in annual installments of \$200,000 to \$4,130,000 through February 1, 2034; interest at 3.0 to 6.0%	19,100,000
\$8,465,000 2014 General Obligation Refunding Bonds due in annual installments of \$100,000 to \$1,170,000 through September 1, 2026; interest at 2.0% - 4%	7,310,000
\$9,370,000 2015 General Obligation Refunding Bonds due in annual installments of \$100,000 to \$1,945,000 through September 1, 2028; interest at 2.0% - 5.0%	8,925,000
<i>Total General Obligation Bonds</i>	<u>39,590,288</u>

Certificates of Obligation:

\$10,760,000 2010 Certificates of Obligation due in annual installments of \$70,000 to \$2,650,000 through September 1, 2031; interest at 2.0% to 4.25%	10,165,000
\$3,400,000 2011 Certificates of Obligation due in annual installments of \$100,000 to \$290,000 through September 1, 2031; interest at 2.0% to 3.5%	1,955,000
\$2,500,000 2013 Certificates of Obligation due in annual installments of \$100,000 to \$200,000 through September 1, 2028; interest at 2.7%	1,825,000
\$12,445,000 2016 Certificates of Obligation due in annual installments of \$100,000 to \$4,305,000 through September 1, 2036; interest at 3.0% to 5.0%	12,345,000
\$8,800,000 2016A Certificates of Obligation due in annual installments of \$100,000 to \$4,200,000 through September 1, 2037; interest at 3.5% to 5.5%	8,800,000
<i>Total Certificates of Obligation Bonds</i>	<u>35,090,000</u>
Total Governmental Bonded Debt	<u>\$ 74,680,288</u>

Utility Fund Revenue Bonds:

\$7,835,000 Utility System Revenue, Series 2010, due in annual installments of \$65,000 to \$1,065,000 through February 1, 2031; interest at 2.0% to 4.0%	\$ 7,400,000
\$21,405,000 Utility System Revenue, Series 2014, due in annual installments of \$190,000 to \$2,335,000 through February 1, 2037; interest at 3.0% to 5.0%.	20,970,000
\$4,430,000 Utility System Revenue, Series 2016, due in annual installments of \$100,000 to \$345,000 through February 1, 2037; interest at 3.0% to 5.0%.	4,330,000
\$8,415,000 Utility System Revenue, Series 2017, due in annual installments of \$190,000 to \$620,000 through February 1, 2037; interest at 3.0% to 4.0%.	8,415,000
<i>Total Utility Revenue Bonds</i>	<u>41,115,000</u>

General Obligation Bonds - Utility Portion

\$1,490,184 2011 General Obligation Refunding Bonds due in annual installments of \$265,000 to \$550,000 through September 1, 2021, Interest at 2.0% to 3.0%	264,711
\$4,825,000 2013 General Obligation Refunding Bonds due in annual installments of \$330,000 to \$650,000 through February 1, 2023; interest at 1.51%	3,445,000
\$5,385,000 2015 General Obligation Refunding Bonds due in annual installments of \$25,000 to \$1,025,000 through September 1, 2026; interest at 2.0% to 5.0%	4,875,000
<i>Total GO Refunding Bonds</i>	<u>8,584,711</u>
Total Business-Type Bonded Debt	<u>\$ 49,699,711</u>

CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS
NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)
SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE I -- LONG-TERM DEBT (Continued)

The City is required by the revenue bond ordinances to establish certain accounts to maintain and operate the Utility System and to provide for the payment of bond principal and interest. Included in these requirements is maintenance of a "Reserve Fund" for the payment of bond principal and interest when other required accounts are insufficient for that purpose. The Reserve Fund is to contain, at a minimum, an amount equal to the average debt service requirement of all the outstanding Utility System Bonds. The Reserve Fund requirement was met with the purchase of a surety bond. The City is in compliance with other significant requirements. The assets of these restricted accounts are classified in the balance sheet as restricted assets.

The annual requirements to amortize all bonded debt and obligations outstanding as of September 30, 2017, including interest payments, are as follows:

Year Ending September 30,	Governmental Activities		Business-Type Activities	
	Principal	Interest	Principal	Interest
2018	\$ 2,756,622	\$ 2,739,317	\$ 1,773,378	\$ 1,738,630
2019	2,726,750	2,658,149	1,878,249	1,694,536
2020	2,936,916	2,567,038	1,983,084	1,644,735
2021	2,860,000	2,474,634	2,100,000	1,583,250
2022	3,015,000	2,372,302	2,195,000	1,504,573
2023-2027	17,085,000	10,119,017	11,130,000	6,227,839
2028-2032	20,475,000	6,769,769	13,105,000	3,942,474
2033-2037	22,825,000	2,497,594	15,535,000	1,403,079
	<u>\$ 74,680,288</u>	<u>\$ 32,197,820</u>	<u>\$ 49,699,711</u>	<u>\$ 19,739,116</u>

CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS
NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)
SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE I -- LONG-TERM DEBT (Continued)

Changes in Long-Term Liabilities

<u>Governmental Activities</u>	Balance 10/1/2016	Additions	Reductions	Balance 9/30/2017	Due Within One Year
General Obligation Bonds	\$ 41,464,030	\$ -	\$ (1,873,742)	\$ 39,590,288	\$ 1,961,622
Bond Premiums	1,853,468	477,120	(182,654)	2,147,934	-
Certificates of Obligation	26,970,000	8,800,000	(680,000)	35,090,000	795,000
Capital Leases	126,393	1,698,016	(307,111)	1,517,298	423,476
Compensated Absences	1,154,725	765,995	(624,772)	1,295,948	736,897
Net Other Post Employment Benefit Obligations Payable	241,583	129,737	-	371,320	-
Net Pension Liability	24,503,531	636,889	-	25,140,420	-
<i>Total Governmental Activities</i>	<u>96,313,730</u>	<u>12,507,757</u>	<u>(3,668,279)</u>	<u>105,153,208</u>	<u>3,916,995</u>
<u>Business-Type Activities</u>					
Revenue Bonds	33,120,000	8,415,000	(420,000)	41,115,000	700,000
General Obligation Refunding Bonds	9,635,970	-	(1,051,259)	8,584,711	1,073,378
Bond Premiums	1,055,428	494,961	(97,698)	1,452,691	-
Capital Leases	36,120	-	-	36,120	18,512
Compensated Absences	399,941	237,844	(217,741)	420,044	232,913
Net Other Post Employment Benefit Obligations Payable	89,354	47,985	-	137,339	-
Net Pension Liability	8,213,594	239,605	-	8,453,199	-
<i>Total Business-Type Activities</i>	<u>52,550,407</u>	<u>9,435,395</u>	<u>(1,786,698)</u>	<u>60,199,104</u>	<u>2,024,803</u>
 Total Primary Government	 <u>\$ 148,864,137</u>	 <u>\$ 21,943,152</u>	 <u>\$ (5,454,977)</u>	 <u>\$ 165,352,312</u>	 <u>\$ 5,941,798</u>

Compensated absences and other postemployment benefit obligation for governmental activities are generally liquidated by the general fund.

Utility System Revenue Bonds, Series 2017, were issued in March 2017 in the amount of \$8,415,000. Proceeds of the bonds are for wastewater treatment improvements and to fund the purchase of the Springs Hill Wastewater Treatment Plant.

Certificates of Obligation, Series 2016-A, were issued February 2017 in the amount of \$8,800,000 to fund various streets and drainage improvements.

CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS
 NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)
 SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE I -- LONG-TERM DEBT (Continued)

Component Unit

The component unit received funds from First Commercial Bank N.A. to partially finance the purchase of land held for future economic incentive and development. The original principal amount of \$863,128 carries interest at the rate of 2.54% for a 10-year fixed period, after which the interest rate will equal the Prime Rate less 1.00%. The loan calls for monthly payments of \$5,786.78 (including principal and interest) and is secured by the real estate. Long-term debt activity for the component unit is summarized as follows:

	Balance Outstanding 10/1/2016	Increases	Decreases	Balance Outstanding 9/30/2017
Notes Payable	\$ 851,344	\$ -	\$ (48,084)	\$ 803,260

Annual requirements to amortize the notes payables as of September 30, 2016 are as follows:

Fiscal Year	Principal	Interest	Total
2018	\$ 49,337	\$ 20,104	\$ 69,441
2019	50,623	18,819	69,442
2020	51,893	17,548	69,441
2021	53,294	16,147	69,441
2022	54,683	14,759	69,442
Thereafter	543,430	64,131	607,561
	\$ 803,260	\$ 151,508	\$ 954,768

NOTE J -- EMPLOYEES' RETIREMENT SYSTEMS

Texas Municipal Retirement System

Plan Description

The City participates as one of 872 plans in the nontraditional, joint contributory, hybrid defined benefit pension plan administered by the Texas Municipal Retirement System (TMRS). TMRS is an agency created by the state of Texas and administered in accordance with the TMRS Act, Subtitle G, Title 8, Texas Government Code (the TMRS Act) as an agent multiple-employer retirement system for municipal employees in the State of Texas. The TMRS Act places the general administration and management of the system with a six-member Board of Trustees. Although the Governor, with the advice and consent of the Senate, appoints the Board, TMRS is not fiscally dependent on the State of Texas. The TMRS defined benefit pension plan is a tax-qualified plan under Section 401(a) of the Internal Revenue Code. TMRS issues a publicly available comprehensive annual financial report (CAFR) that can be obtained at www.tmrs.com.

All eligible employees of the City are required to participate in TMRS retirement system

CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS
 NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)
 SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE J -- EMPLOYEES' RETIREMENT SYSTEMS (CONTINUED)

Texas Municipal Retirement System (Continued)

Benefits Provided

TMRS provides retirement, disability, and death benefits. Benefit provisions are adopted by the governing body of the City, within the options available in the state statutes governing TMRS.

At retirement, the benefit is calculated as if the sum of the employee's contributions, with interest, and the City-financed monetary credits with interest were used to purchase an annuity. Members may choose to receive their retirement benefit in one of seven payment options. Members may also choose to receive a portion of their benefit as a Partial Lump Sum Distribution in an amount equal to 12, 24, or 36 monthly payments, which cannot exceed 75% of the member's deposits and interest.

At the December 31, 2016 valuation and measurement dates, the following employees were covered by the benefit terms:

	Plan Year 2016	Plan Year 2015
Inactive employees or beneficiaries		
currently receiving benefits	221	213
Inactive employees entitled to but not		
yet receiving benefits	161	137
Active employees	363	348
	745	698

Contributions

The contribution rates for employees in TMRS are either 5%, 6%, or 7% of employee gross earnings, and the City matching percentages are either 100%, 150%, or 200%, both as adopted by the governing body of the City. Under the state law governing TMRS, the contribution rate for each city is determined annually by the actuary, using the Entry Age Normal (EAN) actuarial cost method. The actuarially determined rate is the estimated amount necessary to finance the cost of benefits earned by employees during the year, with an additional amount to finance any unfunded accrued liability.

For the year ending September 30, 2017, employees for the City were required to contribute 7% of their annual gross earnings during the fiscal year. The contribution rates for the City were 15.25% and 16.04% in calendar years 2016 and 2017, respectively. The City's contributions to TMRS for the year ended September 30, 2017 were \$3,862,340, and exceeded the required contributions by \$674,365.

CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS
NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)
SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE J -- EMPLOYEE RETIREMENT SYSTEM (CONTINUED)

Texas Municipal Retirement System (Continued)

Net Pension Liability

The City's Net Pension Liability (NPL) was measured as of December 31, 2016, and the Total Pension Liability (TPL) used to calculate the Net Pension Liability was determined by an actuarial valuation as of that date.

Actuarial Assumptions

The Total Pension Liability in the December 31, 2016 actuarial valuation was determined using the following actuarial assumptions:

Inflation	2.5% per year
Salary Increases	3.5% to 10.5%, including inflation
Investment Rate of Return*	6.75%

* Presented net of pension plan investment expense, including inflation

Salary increases were based on a service-related table. Mortality rates for active members, retirees, and beneficiaries were based on the gender-distinct RP2000 Combined Health Mortality Table, with male rates multiplied by 109% and female rates multiplied by 103%. The rates are projected on a fully generational basis by scale BB to account for future mortality improvements. For disabled annuitants, the gender-distinct RP2000 Combined Healthy Mortality Tables with Blue Collar Adjustment are used with males rates multiplied by 109% and female rates multiplied by 103% with a 3-year set-forward for both males and females. In addition, a 3% minimum mortality rate is applied to reflect the impairment for younger members who become disabled. The rates are projected on a fully generational basis by scale BB to account for future mortality improvements subject to the 3% floor.

Actuarial assumptions used in the December 31, 2016 valuation were based on the results of actuarial experience studies. The experience study in TMRS was for the period December 31, 2010 through December 31, 2014. Healthy post-retirement mortality rates and annuity purchase rates were updated based on a Mortality Experience Investigation Study covering 2009 through 2011, and dated December 31, 2013. These assumptions were first used in the December 31, 2013 valuation, along with a change to the Entry Age Normal (EAN) actuarial cost method. Assumptions are reviewed annually. No additional changes were made for the 2014 valuation. After the Asset Allocation Study analysis and experience investigation study, the Board amended the long-term expected rate of return on pension plan investments from 7% to 6.75%. Plan assets are managed on a total return basis with an emphasis on both capital appreciation as well as the production of income, in order to satisfy the short-term and long-term funding needs of TMRS.

CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS
 NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)
 SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE J -- EMPLOYEE RETIREMENT SYSTEM (CONTINUED)

Texas Municipal Retirement System (Continued)

Actuarial Assumptions (Continued)

The long-term expected rate of return on pension plan investments was determined using a building-block method in which best estimate ranges of expected future real rates of return (expected returns, net of pension plan investment expense and inflation) are developed for each major asset class. These ranges are combined to produce the long-term expected rate of return by weighting the expected future rates of return by the target asset allocation percentage and by adding the expected inflation. In determining their best estimate of a recommended investment return assumption under the various alternative asset allocation portfolios, GRS focused on the area between (1) arithmetic mean (aggressive) without an adjustment for time (conservative) and (2) the geometric mean (conservative) with an adjustment for time (aggressive). At its meeting on July 30, 2015, the TMRS Board approved a new portfolio target allocation. The target allocation and best estimates of real rates of return for each major asset class are summarized in the following table:

<u>Asset Class</u>	<u>Target Allocation</u>	<u>Long-term Expected Real Rate of Return (Arithmetic)</u>
Domestic Equity	17.50%	4.55%
International Equity	17.50%	6.35%
CoreFixed Income	10.00%	1.00%
Non-Core Fixed Income	20.00%	4.15%
Real Return	10.00%	4.15%
Real Estate	10.00%	4.75%
Absolute Return	10.00%	4.00%
Private Equity	5.00%	7.75%
	<u>100.00%</u>	

Discount Rate

The discount rate used to measure the Total Pension Liability was 6.75%. The projection of cash flows used to determine the discount rate assumed that employee and employer contributions will be made at the rates specified in statute. Based on that assumption, the pension plan's Fiduciary Net Position was projected to be available to make all projected future benefit payments of current active and inactive employees. Therefore, the long-term expected rate of return on pension plan investments was applied to all periods of projected benefit payments to determine the Total Pension Liability.

CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS
NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)
SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE J -- EMPLOYEE RETIREMENT SYSTEM (CONTINUED)

Texas Municipal Retirement System (Continued)

Changes in the Net Pension Liability

The below schedule presents the changes in the Net Pension Liability as of December 31, 2016:

	Total Pension Liability	Plan Fiduciary Net Position	Net Pension Liability
Balance at December 31, 2015:	\$ 94,243,215	\$ 61,526,090	\$ 38,037,194
Changes for the year:			
Service Cost	3,288,440	-	3,288,440
Interest	6,345,379	-	6,345,379
Change of Benefit Terms	-	-	-
Differences Between Expected and Actual Experience	124,086	-	124,086
Changes of Assumptions	-	-	-
Contributions - Employer	-	3,457,964	(3,457,964)
Contributions - Employee	-	1,315,376	(1,315,376)
Net Investment Income	-	4,157,561	(4,157,561)
Benefit Payments, Including Refunds of Employee Contributions	(3,763,653)	(3,763,653)	-
Administrative Expense	-	(46,960)	46,960
Other Changes	-	(2,530)	2,530
Net Changes	5,994,252	5,117,758	876,494
Balance at December 31, 2016:	\$ 100,237,467	\$ 66,643,848	\$ 33,593,619

The following presents the net pension liability of the City, calculated using the discount rate of 6.75%, as well as what the City's net pension liability would be if it were calculated using a discount rate that is 1-percentage point lower (5.75%) or 1-percentage point higher (7.75%) than the current rate:

	Discount Rate		
	5.75%	6.75%	7.75%
Net Pension Liability (Asset)	\$ 48,468,544	\$ 33,593,619	\$ 21,485,456

Pension Plan Fiduciary Net Position

Detailed information about the pension plan's Fiduciary Net Position is available in a separately-issued TMRS financial report. That report may be obtained on the Internet at www.tmr.com

CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS
 NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)
 SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE J -- EMPLOYEE RETIREMENT SYSTEM (CONTINUED)

Texas Municipal Retirement System (Continued)

Pension Expense and Deferred Outflows/Inflows of Resources Related to Pensions

For the year ended September 30, 2017, the City recognized pension expense of \$5,327,761. Also as of September 30, 2017, the City reported deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources related to pensions from the following sources:

	Deferred Outflows of Resources	Deferred Inflows of Resources
Differences between Expected and Actual Economic Experience	\$ 111,703	\$ -
Changes in Actuarial Assumptions	161,228	-
Differences between Projected and Actual Investment Earnings	2,809,614	-
Contributions subsequent to the Measurement Date	3,053,778	-
	\$ 6,136,323	\$ -

Deferred outflows of resources in the amount of \$3,053,778 is related to pensions resulting from contributions subsequent to the measurement date, and will be recognized as a reduction of the net pension liability for the plan year ending December 31, 2017. Other amounts reported as deferred outflows and inflows of resources related to pensions will be recognized in pension expense as follows:

For the Plan Year ended December 31,	
2017	\$ 1,112,839
2018	1,079,814
2019	877,508
2020	12,384
	\$ 3,082,545

NOTE K -- POST EMPLOYMENT BENEFITS OTHER THAN PENSIONS

Retiree Health Benefits

Plan Description

In addition to the pension benefits described in Note J, the City administers a single-employer defined benefit healthcare plan for retirees (the Plan), established under legal authority of the City Charter. The City is the only employer participating and contributing to the Plan. The Plan does not issue a publicly available financial report.

CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS
 NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)
 SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE K -- POST EMPLOYMENT BENEFITS OTHER THEN PENSIONS (CONTINUED)

Retiree Health Benefits (Continued)

Plan Description (Continued)

The Plan provides healthcare insurance for eligible retirees (employees hired prior to January 1, 2008, and retire eligible for service retirement from Texas Municipal Retirement System with a retirement date of December 31, 2002 or later) and their dependents. This benefit is based on years of service with the City as follows:

<u>Minimum Years Continuous Service</u>	<u>Minimum Age</u>	<u>% Premium Paid by City</u>
15	57	0%
20	57	50%
25	57	100%

Eligible retirees will continue until the employee becomes Medicare eligible, at which time the employee will have the option to obtain a Medicare supplement or continue on the City's retiree plan at their own expense. Employees hired on or after January 1, 2008 will not receive a City contribution and will be responsible for payment of the actuarially established premium for retiree and dependent coverage.

Retiree premiums are the same as the premiums for active employees. For eligible employees retiring after December 31, 2010, the City will establish premium rates using actuarial methods to determine the appropriate rates by attained age. The City's contribution for a retiree's premium will not exceed the City's standard contribution toward an active employee's premium.

Plan members consist of the following at September 30, 2017:

Retirees and beneficiaries receiving benefits	14
Active Plan Members	54
Total	68

Annual OPEB Cost and Net OPEB Obligation (Asset)

The City's annual other postemployment benefit (OPEB) cost (expense) is calculated based on the *annual required contribution of the employer (ARC)*. The City has elected to calculate the ARC and related information using the unit credit method. The ARC represents a level of funding that, if paid on an ongoing basis, is projected to cover normal cost each year and amortize any unfunded actuarial liabilities (or funding excess) over a period not to exceed thirty years. The following table shows the components of the City's annual OPEB cost for the year, the amount actually contributed to the Plan, and changes in the City's net OPEB obligation of the Plan:

CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS
 NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)
 SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE K -- POST EMPLOYMENT BENEFITS OTHER THEN PENSIONS (CONTINUED)

Retiree Health Benefits (Continued)

Annual OPEB Cost and Net OPEB Obligation (Asset) (Continued)

Annual Required Contribution (ARC)	\$ 181,898
Interest on Net OPEB Obligation	11,583
Adjustment to Annual Required Contribution	(15,759)
Annual OPEB Cost (Expense)	177,722
Contributions Made	-
Increase in Net OPEB Obligation (Asset)	177,722
Net OPEB Obligation (Asset) - Beginning of Year	330,937
Net OPEB Obligation (Asset) - End of Year	\$ 508,659

The total net OPEB obligation was \$371,320 for governmental activities and \$137,339 for business-type activities. The City's annual OPEB cost, contributions and unfunded liability for the past three years are as follows:

Fiscal Year	Annual OPEB Cost	Contribution Percentage	Net OPEB Obligation
2017	\$ 177,722	0.0%	\$ 508,659
2016	96,258	16.5%	330,938
2015	105,581	16.3%	250,536

Funded Status and Funding Progress

As of January 1, 2016, the most recent actuarial valuation date, the actuarial accrued liability for benefits was \$1,493,356. The covered payroll (annual payroll of active employees covered by the Plan) was about \$3,766,855, and the ratio of the unfunded actuarial accrued liability (UAAL) to the covered payroll was 39.6%.

The projected benefit payments for an ongoing plan involve estimates of the value of reported amounts and assumptions about the probability of occurrence of events far into the future. Examples include assumptions about future employment, mortality, and the healthcare cost trend. Amounts determined regarding the funded status of the plan and the annual required contributions of the employer are subject to continual revision as actual results are compared with past expectations and new estimates are made about the future. The schedule of funding progress, presented as required supplementary information following the notes to the basic financial statements, will present information about whether the actuarial value of plan assets is increasing or decreasing over time relative to the actuarial accrued liabilities for benefits.

CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS
NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)
SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE K -- POST EMPLOYMENT BENEFITS (Continued)

Retiree Health Benefits (Continued)

Actuarial Methods and Assumptions

Projections of benefits for financial reporting purposes are based on the substantive plan (the Plan as understood by the employer and the Plan members) and include the types of benefits provided at the time of each valuation and the historical pattern of sharing of benefit costs between the employer and plan members to the point. The actuarial methods and assumptions used include techniques that are designed to reduce the effects of short-term volatility in actuarial accrued liabilities and the actuarial value of assets, consistent with the long-term perspective of the calculations.

In the January 1, 2016 actuarial valuation, the projected unit credit using full accrual at full eligibility age actuarial method was used. The actuarial assumptions included a 3.5% investment rate of return (net of administrative expenses) and an annual healthcare cost trend rate of 8.5% initially, reduced by decrements to an ultimate rate of 5.0%. The Plan's unfunded actuarial accrued liability is being amortized over 22 years utilizing the unit credit method. Demographic and other assumptions include mortality rates by age and gender, and termination rates by age and years of service. No provision was provided for inflation or for salary increases, as they do not play any role in the calculation of the liability. Additionally, post-retirement benefit increases were not included in the calculations.

Supplemental Death Benefits Plan

The City also participates in the cost sharing multiple-employer defined benefit group-term life insurance plan operated by TMRS known as the Supplemental Death Benefits Fund (SDBF). The City elected, by ordinance, to provide group-term life insurance coverage to both current and retired employees. The city may terminate coverage under and discontinue participation in the SDBF by adopting an ordinance before November 1 of any year to be effective the following January 1.

The death benefit for active employees provides a lump-sum payment approximately equal to the employee's annual salary (calculated based on the employee's actual earnings, for the 12-month period preceding the month of death); retired employees are insured for \$7,500; this coverage is an "other post-employment benefit," or OPEB.

The City contributes to the SDBF at a contractually required rate as determined by an annual actuarial valuation. The rate is equal to the cost of providing one-year term life insurance. The funding policy for the SDBF program is to assure the adequate resources are available to meet all death benefit payments for the upcoming year; the intent is not to pre-fund retiree term life insurance during employees' entire careers.

The City's contributions to the TMRS SDBF for the years ended September 2017, 2016, and 2015 were \$36,210; \$36,611; and \$32,552, respectively, which equaled the required contributions each year.

CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS
 NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)
 SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE L -- INTERFUND TRANSFERS

Interfund transfers during the year ended September 30, 2017, were as follows:

<u>Receiving Fund/Activity</u>	<u>Transferring Fund/Activity</u>	<u>Amount</u>	
General Fund	Nonmajor Governmental Fund	\$ 95,000	Reimbursement for Payroll Costs
Debt Service	General Fund	565,000	Support Annual Debt Service
Nonmajor Special Revenue	General Fund	218,488	Support Golf Course Operations
Nonmajor Capital Projects	General Fund	2,259,585	Support Various Capital Projects
Nonmajor Capital Projects	Nonmajor Special Revenue	150,000	Support Various Capital Projects
Nonmajor Capital Projects	Utility Fund	89,413	Support Infrastructure Improvements
Utility Fund	Nonmajor Capital Projects	16,590	Support Utility System Improvements
Internal Service Fund	Utility Fund	8,900	Support Retiree Benefits
Total Transfers		<u>\$ 3,402,976</u>	

NOTE M -- COMMITMENTS AND CONTINGENCIES

Litigation

The City is the subject of various claims and litigation that have arisen in the course of its operations. Management is of the opinion that the City's liability in these cases, if decided adversely to the City, will not have a material effect on the City's financial position.

Grants

Amounts received or receivable from grantor agencies are subject to audit and adjustment by such agencies. Any disallowed claims, including amounts already collected may constitute a liability of the applicable funds. The amount, if any, of expenditures which may be disallowed by the grantor cannot be determined at this time although the City expects such amounts, if any, to be immaterial.

CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS
 NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)
 SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE M -- COMMITMENTS AND CONTINGENCIES (CONTINUED)

Construction Commitments

The City has entered into construction and engineering contracts for the improvement of various streets and utility systems, as well as park improvements. Estimated future commitments associated with these contracts as of September 30, 2017 are as follows:

Primary Government	Total	Incurred Thru	Estimated
<u>General Government</u>	<u>Commitments</u>	<u>September 2017</u>	<u>Future</u>
<u>Commitments</u>			<u>Commitments</u>
Bldgs, Streets & Drainage	\$ 15,293,427	\$ 10,393,173	\$ 4,900,254
Professional Services	1,601,790	1,328,143	273,647
	<u>16,895,217</u>	<u>11,721,316</u>	<u>5,173,901</u>
 <u>Utility System</u>			
Utility System Improvements	19,125,668	15,729,810	3,395,858
Professional Services (Engineering)	3,608,760	2,234,177	1,374,583
	<u>22,734,428</u>	<u>17,963,987</u>	<u>4,770,441</u>
 Total Primary Government Commitments	<u>\$ 39,629,645</u>	<u>\$ 29,685,303</u>	<u>\$ 9,944,342</u>

Economic Development Agreements

WDW Development, LP Agreement

The City entered into a Chapter 380 Agreement with WBW Land Investments, LP (WBW) which provides that the City shall reimburse WBW for certain public infrastructure improvements out of 50% of the increased tax received from home sales in the residential development project known as the Meadows at Nolte Farms over a period of ten years, beginning one year immediately after the date of initial completion, at a cost not to exceed \$500,000. The City estimates the increase in assessed value on the project over the base year to be \$15,000,000. Reimbursements to WBW are to begin March 2017 and are estimated to be \$24,000 annually. Reimbursement for the year ended September 30, 2017 was \$22,654.

Power Purchase Agreements

On December 17, 2015, the City entered into a fifteen (15) year agreement with the City of Garland to purchase energy produced by a solar-power facility, along with associated Environmental Attributes. The terms of the agreement began on the Commercial Operation Date (March 17, 2017) and ends on the day preceding the 15th anniversary of the agreement. In addition, the City entered into a separate twenty (20) year agreement with the City of Garland to purchase energy produced by a wind energy facility, along with associated Environmental Attributes. The terms of the agreement began on the Commercial Operation Date (November 13, 2016) and ends on the day preceding the 20th anniversary of the agreement. Both agreements carry performance guarantees for all parties, as well as mutual security provisions.

CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS
NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)
SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE M -- COMMITMENTS AND CONTINGENCIES (Continued)

Commitments under Noncapitalized Leases

Commitments under noncapitalized (operating) leases for copiers provide for future rental payments as of September 30, 2017 as follows:

<u>Year Ending September 30,</u>	<u>Rentals</u>
2018	\$ 34,508
2019	30,662
2020	25,664
2021	15,491
2022	5,403
Total	<u>\$ 111,728</u>

Encumbrances

Encumbrances represent commitments related to unperformed contracts for goods or services. Encumbrance accounting, under which purchase orders, contracts and other commitments for the expenditure of resources are recorded to reserve that portion of the applicable appropriation, is utilized in the governmental funds. Encumbrances lapse at year-end and do not constitute expenditures or liabilities because the commitments must be reappropriated and honored during the subsequent year. Therefore, there were no outstanding encumbrances as of September 30, 2017.

Guadalupe Regional Medical Center

The City of Seguin is contingently liable for 50% of operating deficits produced by Guadalupe Regional Medical Center (GRMC), if any, with Guadalupe County contingently responsible for the remainder. As of September 30, 2016, long-term debt of GRMC consisted of Revenue Bonds in the amount of \$115,440,000. The bonds are secured by revenues of the Medical Center, mortgage insurance issued by FHA and funds held in trust.

CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS
NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)
SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE M -- COMMITMENTS AND CONTINGENCIES (Continued)

Guadalupe Regional Medical Center (Continued)

Following is a summary of financial data as reported in the Guadalupe Regional Medical Center's most recent audited financial statements for the year ended September 30, 2016:

Assets:	
Current Assets	\$ 74,140,584
Other Assets	20,476,071
Capital Assets (Net)	97,068,522
Deferred Outflows of Resources	7,397,272
Total Assets	<u>199,082,449</u>
Liabilities & Net Assets:	
Current Liabilities	29,048,690
Other Liabilities	124,768,403
Total Liabilities	<u>153,817,093</u>
Deferred Inflows of Resources	1,111,232
Net Position	<u>\$ 44,154,124</u>
Operating Revenues:	
Net Revenues from Patient Services	\$ 146,703,264
Other Operating Revenues	2,700,341
Total Operating Revenues	149,403,605
Operating Expenses:	144,309,429
Total Net Operating Income	5,094,176
Nonoperating Revenues and (Expenses)	(7,130,786)
Increase (Decrease) in Net Position	<u>\$ (2,036,610)</u>

Schertz/Seguin Local Government Corporation

The City of Seguin is jointly liable, together with the City of Schertz, for operating deficits and long-term debt of the Schertz/Seguin Local Government Corporation (See Note A1). Following is a summary of financial data as reported in the Corporation's most recent audited financial statements dated September 30, 2016:

Assets:	
Current Assets	\$ 14,027,427
Restricted Cash and Cash Equivalents	6,859,879
Property, Plant & Equipment	95,187,724
Other Assets & Deferred Charges	2,546,875
Total Assets & Deferred Charges	<u>118,621,905</u>
Liabilities & Net Position:	
Current Liabilities	4,858,647
Revenue Bonds (Less Current Maturities and Unamortized Discounts)	100,976,449
Total Liabilities	<u>105,835,096</u>
Net Position:	
Net Investment in Capital Assets	(2,288,897)
Restricted	5,364,082
Unrestricted	9,820,433
Total Net Position	<u>\$ 12,895,618</u>

CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS
 NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)
 SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE M -- COMMITMENTS AND CONTINGENCIES (Continued)

Schertz/Seguin Local Government Corporation (Continued)

The Corporation had revenue bonds outstanding in the amount of \$101,245,000 (as of September 30, 2016) to provide funds to build, improve, extend, enlarge and repair the Corporation's utility system, fund a reserve, and pay the costs of bond issuance. The bond resolution pledges intergovernmental contract revenues from the cities of Schertz and Seguin (the participating governments) to bond holders. Under the intergovernmental water supply contract, the participating governments are unconditionally obligated to pay their respective shares of annual contract revenue bond debt service from the operation of their respective utility systems.

NOTE N – PLEDGED REVENUE

The Seguin Economic Development Corporation (SEDC) entered into an interlocal cooperative agreement with the City to transfer lawfully available surplus sales and use tax collected on behalf of SEDC to fund a portion of the debt service requirements of the 2011 *Combination Tax and Limited Pledge Revenue Certificates*. SEDC has pledged to transfer, on an annual basis, debt service requirements up to a total cumulative principal amount of \$880,000. Remaining commitment on the agreement as of September 30, 2017 is \$139,050.

In addition, SEDC entered into an agreement, along with the City, to fund certain improvements to the IH-10 frontage road in an amount not to exceed \$1,250,000. SEDC's portion of the commitment will be funded by a pledge of future sales tax revenue to reimburse the City ½ of the debt service requirements of bonded debt to fund the improvements. The remaining commitment on the agreement as of September 30, 2017 is \$615,775 over a three-year period.

Total contributions to the City in support of debt were \$344,375 for the year ended September 30, 2017. Annual requirements to satisfy the commitment are estimated to be 15% to 28% of the underlying revenue source (sales tax) and are as follows:

	Pledged Revenue
2018	\$ 344,175
2019	203,650
2020	207,000
Total Pledged	<u>\$ 754,825</u>

NOTE O -- RISK MANAGEMENT

The City is exposed to various risks of loss related to torts; theft of, damage to, and destruction of assets; business interruption; errors and omissions; injuries to employees; employee health benefits; and other claims of various natures. The City contracts with the Texas Municipal League (TML) to provide insurance coverage for property and casualty, and workers compensation. TML is a multi-employer group that provides for a combination of risk sharing among pool participants and stop loss coverage. Contributions are set annually by the provider. Liability by the City is generally limited to the contributed amounts. Annual contributions for the year ended September 30, 2017 were \$349,836 for property and casualty and \$186,597 for workers' compensation coverage.

CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS
NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)
SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE P – TAX ABATEMENT DISCLOSURES

The City of Seguin negotiates property tax abatement agreements on a cases-by-case basis. The agreements freeze property tax revenues received from the paying entity at current levels and deprives the City of a percentage of future increases in ad valorem property tax revenues that otherwise would have resulted from increases in assessed valuation in such areas until the tax abatement period terminates. The Texas Property Redevelopment and Tax Abatement Act, Chapter 312 of the Texas Tax Code authorizes taxing jurisdictions to provide property tax abatement for a limited period of time as inducement for the development or redevelopment of property.

The City of Seguin Tax Abatement Guidelines (the “Guidelines”), adopted and effective on January 1, 2017, allow abatements to be granted only for the additional value of real or personal property improvements. No abatement will be approved that exceeds 100% of the new appraised value of capital improvements and/or personal property, or that will reduce current ad valorem revenue, and will be effective for no more than ten years. In the event that a facility that has been granted a tax abatement discontinues producing goods or services, fails to commence or complete the required capital investment, or fails to comply with any other provisions of the tax abatement agreement, the abatement agreement may be terminated by the City and all taxes previously abated will be recaptured and paid within 60 days of the termination. The Guidelines also include three abatement schedules that identify maximum allowable percentages based on the amount of real and personal property investment. These schedules serve as a guide for staff in determining a recommended abatement for a specific project.

As of September 30, 2017, the City has tax abatement agreements with seven entities. The gross amount of property tax abated during 2017 was \$2,792,877.

Caterpillar, Inc.: Tax abatement is for a period of ten years beginning January 1, 2010 for the construction and operation of a diesel engine manufacturing facility with an estimated value of \$161,000,000.

ET Seguin Dist, LLC: Tax abatement agreement for a period of five years beginning January 1, 2013 for the construction of a new manufacturing facility valued at an estimated cost of \$11,500,000.

Temic Automotive of North America, Inc.: Tax abatement agreement for a ten year period beginning January 1, 2009 for the purchase and installation of specific personal property representing an investment in excess of \$15,000,000.

Continental Automotive Systems, Inc.: Tax abatement agreement for a period of five years beginning January 1, 2013 for the expansion of real and personal property at Continental’s existing facility with an estimated value of \$113,000,000.

Tractor Supply Co. of Texas, LP: Tax abatement agreement for a period of five years beginning January 1, 2016 for the construction and operation of a distribution facility with an estimated value of \$8,000,000.

Cerealto Seguin, LLC: Tax abatement agreement for a period of five years beginning January 1, 2018 for the construction and operation of a food manufacturing facility with an estimated value of \$58,000,000.

CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS
NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)
SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE P – TAX ABATEMENT DISCLOSURES (Continued)

Six Forks International, LLC: Tax abatement agreement for a period of ten years beginning January 1, 2016 for the restoration of property located at 217 S. River Street, including building a restaurant and bar with an estimated value of \$1,400,000.

NOTE Q – SUBSEQUENT EVENTS

The City approved issuance of *Tax Notes, Series 2017*, in the amount of \$775,000 for purchasing and equipping a fire truck and public works equipment. The notes are to be repaid over seven years at 1.785% interest. The City also approved issuance of *Tax Notes, Series 2018*, in the amount of \$649,000 to be repaid over four years at 2.25% interest. The Tax Notes are to purchase golf carts and equipment.

The City approved an Advance Funding Agreement with TxDOT for Rudeloff Roadway Expansion Project with a total project cost of \$8,501,910 and the City contributing a total of \$1,914,996 of the total cost. The Agreement also carries certain performance requirements by the city.

APPENDIX D
FORM OF OPINION OF BOND COUNSEL

(this page intentionally left blank)



Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP
300 Convent Street, Suite 2100
San Antonio, Texas 78205-3792
United States

Tel +1 210 224 5575
Fax +1 210 270 7205
nortonrosefulbright.com

DRAFT 2/15/18

IN REGARD to the authorization and issuance of the “City of Seguin, Texas Combination Tax and Limited Pledge Revenue Certificates of Obligation, Series 2018” (the *Certificates*), dated March 15, 2018 in the aggregate principal amount of \$_____ we have reviewed the legality and validity of the issuance thereof by the City Council of the City of Seguin, Texas (the *Issuer*). The Certificates are issuable in fully registered form only in denominations of \$5,000 or any integral multiple thereof (within a Stated Maturity). The Certificates have Stated Maturities of September 1 in each of the years 2019 through 2038, unless redeemed prior to Stated Maturity in accordance with the terms stated on the face of the Certificates. Interest on the Certificates accrues from the dates, at the rates, in the manner, and is payable on the dates as provided in the ordinance (the *Ordinance*) authorizing the issuance of the Certificates. Capitalized terms used herein without definition shall have the meanings ascribed thereto in the Ordinance.

WE HAVE SERVED AS BOND COUNSEL for the Issuer solely to pass upon the legality and validity of the issuance of the Certificates under the laws of the State of Texas and with respect to the exclusion of the interest on the Certificates from the gross income of the owners thereof for federal income tax purposes and for no other purpose. We have not been requested to investigate or verify, and have not independently investigated or verified, any records, data, or other material relating to the financial condition or capabilities of the Issuer or the Issuer’s combined utility system and have not assumed any responsibility with respect to the financial condition or capabilities of the Issuer or the disclosure thereof in connection with the sale of the Certificates. We express no opinion and make no comment with respect to the sufficiency of the security for or the marketability of the Certificates. Our role in connection with the Issuer’s Official Statement prepared for use in connection with the sale of the Certificates has been limited as described therein.

WE HAVE EXAMINED, the applicable and pertinent laws of the State of Texas and the United States of America. In rendering the opinions herein we rely upon (1) original or certified copies of the proceedings of the City Council of the Issuer in connection with the issuance of the Certificates, including the Ordinance; (2) customary certifications and opinions of officials of the Issuer; (3) certificates executed by officers of the Issuer relating to the expected use and investment of proceeds of the Certificates and certain other funds of the Issuer and to certain other facts solely within the knowledge and control of the Issuer; and (4) such other documentation, including an examination of the Certificate executed and delivered initially by the Issuer and such matters of law as we deem relevant to the matters discussed below. In such examination, we have assumed the authenticity of all documents submitted to us as originals, the conformity to original copies of all documents submitted to us as certified copies, and the accuracy of the statements and information contained in such certificates. We express no opinion

Legal Opinion of Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP, San Antonio, Texas, in connection with the authorization and issuance of “CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS COMBINATION TAX AND LIMITED PLEDGE REVENUE CERTIFICATES OF OBLIGATION, SERIES 2018”

concerning any effect on the following opinions which may result from changes in law effected after the date hereof.

BASED ON OUR EXAMINATION, IT IS OUR OPINION that the Certificates have been duly authorized and issued in conformity with the laws of the State of Texas now in force and that the Certificates are valid and legally binding obligations of the Issuer enforceable in accordance with the terms and conditions described therein, except to the extent that the enforceability thereof may be affected by bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, moratorium, or other similar laws affecting creditors' rights or the exercise of judicial discretion in accordance with general principles of equity. The Certificates are payable from the proceeds of an ad valorem tax levied, within the limitations prescribed by law, upon all taxable property in the Issuer and are additionally payable from and secured by a lien on and pledge of the Pledged Revenues, being a limited amount of the Net Revenues derived from the operation of the Issuer's combined utility system (the *System*), such lien on and pledge of the limited amount of Net Revenues being subordinate and inferior to the lien on and pledge thereof providing for the payment and security of the currently outstanding Prior Lien Obligations and any Additional Prior Lien Obligations, Junior Lien Obligations, or Subordinate Lien Obligations hereafter issued by the Issuer. The Issuer also previously authorized the issuance of the Limited Pledge Obligations that are payable in part from and secured by a lien on and pledge of a limited amount of the Net Revenues of the System in accordance with the ordinances authorizing the issuance of the currently outstanding Limited Pledge Obligations. In the Ordinance, the Issuer reserves and retains the right to issue Additional Prior Lien Obligations, Junior Lien Obligations, Subordinate Lien Obligations, and Additional Limited Pledge Obligations without limitation as to principal amount but subject to any terms, conditions, or restrictions as may be applicable thereto under law or otherwise.

BASED ON OUR EXAMINATION, IT IS FURTHER OUR OPINION that, assuming continuing compliance after the date hereof by the Issuer with the provisions of the Ordinance and in reliance upon the representations and certifications of the Issuer made in a certificate of even date herewith pertaining to the use, expenditure, and investment of the proceeds of the Certificates, under existing statutes, regulations, published rulings, and court decisions (1) interest on the Certificates will be excludable from the gross income, as defined in section 61 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended to the date hereof (the *Code*), of the owners thereof for federal income tax purposes, pursuant to section 103 of the Code, and (2) interest on the Certificates will not be included in computing the alternative minimum taxable income of the owners thereof who are individuals, or, except as hereinafter described, corporations.

FOR TAXABLE YEARS THAT BEGAN BEFORE JANUARY 1, 2018, interest on the Certificates owned by a corporation will be included in such corporation's adjusted current earnings for purposes of computing the alternative minimum tax on such corporation, other than an S corporation, a qualified mutual fund, a real estate investment trust, a real estate mortgage investment conduit, or a financial asset securitization investment trust. The alternative minimum tax on corporations has been repealed for taxable years beginning on or after January 1, 2018.

WE EXPRESS NO OTHER OPINION with respect to any other federal, state, or local tax consequences under present law or any proposed legislation resulting from the receipt or accrual

Legal Opinion of Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP, San Antonio, Texas, in connection with the authorization and issuance of “CITY OF SEGUIN, TEXAS COMBINATION TAX AND LIMITED PLEDGE REVENUE CERTIFICATES OF OBLIGATION, SERIES 2018”

of interest on, or the acquisition or disposition of, the Certificates. Ownership of tax-exempt obligations such as the Certificates may result in collateral federal tax consequences to, among others, financial institutions, life insurance companies, property and casualty insurance companies, certain foreign corporations doing business in the United States, S corporations with subchapter C earnings and profits, owners of an interest in a financial asset securitization investment trust, individual recipients of Social Security or Railroad Retirement Benefits, individuals otherwise qualifying for the earned income credit, and taxpayers who may be deemed to have incurred or continued indebtedness to purchase or carry, or who have paid or incurred certain expenses allocable to, tax-exempt obligations.

OUR OPINIONS ARE BASED on existing law, which is subject to change. Such opinions are further based on our knowledge of facts as of the date hereof. We assume no duty to update or supplement our opinions to reflect any facts or circumstances that may thereafter come to our attention or to reflect any changes in any law that may thereafter occur or become effective. Moreover, our opinions are not a guarantee of result and are not binding on the Internal Revenue Service; rather, such opinions represent our legal judgment based upon our review of existing law that we deem relevant to such opinions and in reliance upon the representations and covenants referenced above.

Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP

(this page intentionally left blank)

Financial Advisory Services
Provided By:

SAMCO CAPITAL MARKETS, INC.